

BOOK
8

WORDLY WISE

3000®

Direct Academic Vocabulary Instruction

Fourth Edition



Kenneth Hodkinson • Sandra Adams • Erika Hodkinson



EDUCATORS PUBLISHING SERVICE

Quizlet

Follow these simple directions to use this engaging online learning tool, including flashcards and games.

1. Enter **quizlet.com/p/wordlywise3000** in your device's web browser.
2. Find the folder that corresponds to the workbook you are using, and click on it. For example, if you are using the Level 2 Workbook, select "Wordly Wise 3000 Level 2."
3. You will see a set for each lesson in your workbook. Click on the lesson that you are currently studying. (The sets are listed in numerical order.)
4. Choose any of Quizlet's learning modes. Study with Quizlet's fun learning activities and games, compete for high scores, and track your own progress*.

Notes & Tips

- *To track your own progress, you will need to create a Quizlet account. Don't worry; it's free! If you are under 13 years of age, please check with a parent or guardian before creating an account.
- To create an account, click on "Sign up" in the upper right-hand corner of the Quizlet web page. You can sign in with Google or Facebook, or you will need an email address and your birthday. If you are under 13, you will need to use a parent or guardian's email.
- Select a username and password that you can remember!
- If you create an account, you can also bookmark your workbook to access it more easily. Here's how in 3 steps:
 1. Find your workbook. (See Steps 1 and 2 above.)
 2. Click on the icon with three dots in the upper right.
 3. Then click "Bookmark folder" to save your workbook.
- The next time you log in to quizlet.com, you will see your bookmarked workbook on the left-hand side.
- If you are using the Quizlet iOS or Android app, you can search for "eps_wordlywise3000" in the search bar. Be sure to select the "user" option when searching.
- Want to know more about Quizlet, or have a question about using the website or mobile apps? Check out their Help Center at quizlet.com/help.

BOOK
8

WORDLY WISE

3000®

Direct Academic Vocabulary Instruction

Fourth Edition



Kenneth Hodkinson • Sandra Adams • Erika Hodkinson

EDUCATORS PUBLISHING SERVICE
Cambridge and Toronto

Editorial team: Carolyn Daniels, Marie Sweetman, Erika Wentworth

Cover Design: Deborah Rodman, Karen Swyers

Interior Design: Deborah Rodman

Vocabulary Extension Illustrations: Chris Murphy

Passage Illustrations for Lessons 2, 4, 10, 16: Q2AMedia

Passage Photograph Credits: Lesson 1: Courtesy, William J. Clinton Presidential Library; Lesson 3: C.Schiller/Fotolia; Lesson 5: Robert Dodd/B. B. Evans/National Maritime Museum; Lesson 6: Georges Jansoone; Lesson 7: The U.S. National Archives and Records Administration; Lesson 8: NASA Headquarters - Greatest Images of NASA (NASA-HQ-GRIN); Lesson 9: NOAA's Geodesy Collection; Lesson 11: Jesse Walter Fewkes; Lesson 12: Jerome Delahaye/Fotolia; Lesson 13: Sreedhar Yedlapati/Fotolia; Lesson 14: Library of Congress Washington, D.C. 20540 USA; Lesson 15: Masterfile; Lesson 17: Lawrence Jackson/Official White House Photo; Lesson 18: Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division Washington, D.C. 20540 USA; Lesson 19: Daniel Tager/Fotolia; Lesson 20: FSA/OWI Collection/Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division

©2018 by School Specialty, LLC. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic or mechanical means, including photocopying, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Printed in Benton Harbor, MI, in July 2020

ISBN 978-0-8388-7708-1

5 6 7 8 9 PPG 24 23 22 21 20

Contents

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Lesson 1 | 1 | Lesson 13 | 151 |
| A Poet of the People | 8 | More Than Just a Pretty Flower | 158 |
| Lesson 2 | 13 | Lesson 14 | 163 |
| The Iceman | 20 | Leonardo da Vinci: Renaissance Man | 170 |
| Lesson 3 | 26 | Lesson 15 | 175 |
| Telling Tales | 33 | Who's Afraid of the Big, Bad Wolf? | 181 |
| Lesson 4 | 38 | Lesson 16 | 186 |
| The Tiger's Whisker | 45 | The Wisdom of Rabbi Rabinowicz | 192 |
| Review for Lessons 1–4 | 50 | Review for Lessons 13–16 | 197 |
| Lesson 5 | 51 | Lesson 17 | 200 |
| The <i>Bounty</i> , Part One | 58 | The Country Without an Army | 207 |
| Lesson 6 | 63 | Lesson 18 | 212 |
| The <i>Bounty</i> , Part Two | 70 | Prairie Women | 219 |
| Lesson 7 | 75 | Lesson 19 | 224 |
| Women in Space, Part One | 82 | The Thousand-Year Battle | 230 |
| Lesson 8 | 87 | Lesson 20 | 235 |
| Women in Space, Part Two | 94 | Paul Robeson: All-American | 242 |
| Review for Lessons 5–8 | 99 | Review for Lessons 17–20 | 247 |
| Lesson 9 | 102 | Pronunciation Key | 248 |
| The Children of the <i>Bounty</i> | 108 | | |
| Lesson 10 | 114 | | |
| Rigoberta Menchu | 121 | | |
| Lesson 11 | 126 | | |
| The Kachina Dolls of Oraibi | 133 | | |
| Lesson 12 | 138 | | |
| Hearst Castle's Master Builder | 145 | | |
| Review for Lessons 9–12 | 150 | | |

Welcome to *Wordly Wise 3000*®

You've been learning words since you were a tiny baby. At first, you learned them only by hearing other people talk. Now that you are a reader, you have another way to learn words.

Obviously, it's important to know what words mean, but lots of times, we think we can get away without knowing some of them as we read. This could cause a problem. Say you are reading the directions for a new game. You know most of the words in the sentence you're reading. Then you stop for a word you don't recognize:

Please do not touch the blegmy or your score will be lost.

You ask yourself, "What is a *blegmy*?" At first you think, "Well, it's only one word." But then you think, "What is it that I'm not supposed to touch?" All of a sudden, knowing what that one word means is important!

Clearly, the more words you know, the better your understanding of everything you read. *Wordly Wise 3000* will help you learn a lot of words, but it can't teach you *all* the words you'll ever need. It can, however, help guide your learning of new words on your own.

How Do You Learn What Words Mean?

There are two main ways you learn what words mean: directly and indirectly.

You have to learn some words *directly*. You may study them for a class, look them up in a dictionary or glossary, or ask someone what they mean. You also learn word meanings *indirectly* by hearing and reading the words. In fact, the more you listen and read, the more words you'll learn. Reading books, magazines, and online can help build your vocabulary.

At school, you learn a lot of words directly. If you're using this book, you are learning words directly. You are reading the words, learning what they mean, and studying them. Then you are practicing them as you do the activities. Finally, you might even use them in your own writing or conversations. There is an old saying: "Use a word three times and it's yours." Three times might not be enough, of course, but the idea is right. The more you practice using a word, the better you understand it.

What Is “School Language”?

School language—or school words—are the words you find in the books you read, from novels to textbooks, and on tests. You read them online as you look up information. Your teacher uses these words to explain an important concept about math or reading. Some have to do with a particular topic, such as the building of the Great Pyramid in Egypt. Others are words for tasks you are being asked to do, such as *summarize*. These words are different from the kinds of words you use when you’re hanging out with your friends or talking casually with your family. That’s why you often need to study such words directly. In this book, these important words are underlined to help you focus on them.

Wordly Wise 3000 is designed to teach you some of the words you need to do well in school and on tests—and later on in your jobs. It will also help you learn how to learn more words. Remember, there is no single thing that will help you understand what you read as much as knowing word meanings will.

How Do You Figure Out Word Meanings?

What should you do when you come to a word and you think you don’t know what it means?

Say It

First, say it to yourself. Maybe once you do this, it will sound like a word you *do* know. Sometimes you know a word in your head without knowing what it looks like in print. So if you match up what you know and what you read—you have the word!

Use Context

If this doesn’t work, take the next step: look at the context of the word—the other words and sentences around it. Sometimes these can give you a clue to the word’s meaning. Here’s an example:

Mr. Huerta had great respect for his opponent.

Say that you don't know what *opponent* means. Does Mr. Huerta have respect for his teacher? His mother? Then you read on:

The two players sat across from each other in the warm room. The chessboard was between them. Both looked as if they were concentrating very hard.

Now you see that Mr. Huerta is taking part in a chess game. You know that in a chess game, one person plays another. So his *opponent* must be the person he is playing against. You reread the sentence using that meaning. Yes, that works. In this sentence, *opponent* means "someone you play against, or compete with."

Use Word Parts

If the context doesn't help, look at the parts of the word. Does it have any prefixes you know? How about suffixes? Or roots? These can help you figure out what it means. Look at this sentence:

Shania had the misfortune to hurt her arm right before the swim meet.

If you don't know the meaning of *misfortune*, try looking at parts of the word. You might know that *fortune* means "luck." Maybe *mis-* is a prefix. You could look it up, or maybe you remember its meaning from studying prefixes in school. The prefix *mis-* means a few different things, but one of them is "bad." You try it out and reread the sentence using that meaning. It would certainly be bad luck, or a *misfortune*, to hurt your arm before a swim meet.

Look It Up

If saying the word or using context and word parts don't work, you can look it up in a dictionary—either a book or online reference—or a glossary.

Nobody knows the meaning of every word, but good readers know how to use these strategies to figure out words they don't know. Get into the habit of using them as you read, and you may be surprised at how automatic it becomes!

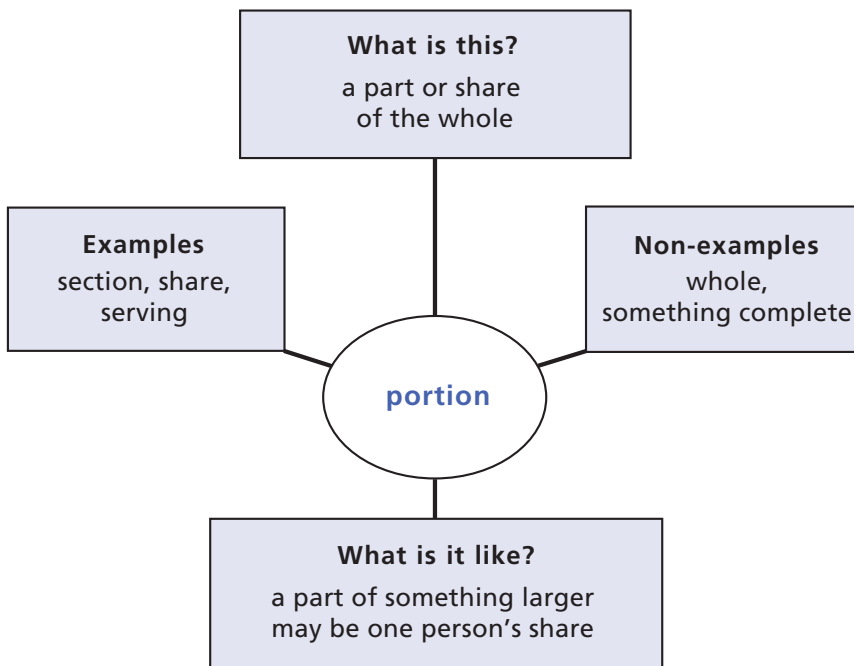
How Well Do You Know a Word?

It's important to know many words and to keep on learning more. But it's also important to know them well. In fact, some experts say that there are four levels of knowing a word:

1. I never saw/heard it before.
2. I've heard/seen it, but I don't know what it means.
3. I think it has something to do with...
4. I know it.*

Just because you can read a word and have memorized its definition, it doesn't mean that you know that word well. You want to know it so well that you know when to use it and when to use another word instead. One way to help deepen your knowledge of a word is to use a graphic organizer like the one below that tells about the word *portion*.

Concept of Definition Map



If you can fill in all the parts of this graphic organizer, you are well on your way to really knowing the word *portion*.

*Dale, E., & O'Rourke, J. (1986). *Vocabulary Building*. Columbus, OH: Zaner-Bloser.

Word List

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

avid

av' id

adj. 1. Having a strong desire for, to the point of greed.

Avid for the attention of their babysitter, the children shouted and tumbled about on the floor.

2. Eager; enthusiastic.

Kiara is an **avid** skateboarder who spends each weekend at the park.



.....
Tell your partner about a hobby or sport you are avid about.

brusque

brusk

adj. Abrupt in manner or speech; gruff.

The coach's **brusque** speech at halftime showed how unhappy he was with the players.

brusqueness *n.* The quality or state of being brusque.

With a **brusqueness** unlike her, Melanie ended the phone conversation.

concise

kən sīs'

adj. Short and to the point.

"No Shoes, No Shirt, No Service" is a **concise** way of explaining a dress code.



.....
Make a concise statement to your partner about your plans tonight.

demean

di mēn'

v. To cause a lowering of self-esteem; to lower in reputation or character.

Don't **demean** yourself by trying to act like those bullies.

demeaning *adj.* Degrading.

June felt that being scolded in front of her friends was **demeaning**.

despicable

des pik' ə bəl

adj. Deserving contempt or scorn.

Stealing from the class treasury was a **despicable** thing to do.

emulate

em' yōō lāt

v. To try to equal; to imitate.

Musicians around the world have tried to **emulate** Louis Armstrong's soulful trumpet playing.



.....
Talk to your partner about someone you try to emulate in an activity or in life.

evoke
ē vōk'

v. 1. To call forth; to produce.

The mayor's appeal for volunteers to clean up the park **evoked** a huge response from people in my neighborhood.

2. To bring to mind, often by suggestion.

The tinkling notes from the music box **evoked** for me the carefree joys of childhood.

evocative *adj.* (ē vāk' ə tiv) Creating something again, especially through the imagination.

The costumes and music of the film were **evocative** of Paris in the 1920s.



.....
Share with your partner a song that evokes good memories for you.

excruciating
eks krōō' shē āt īj

adj. Very painful.

The ointment soothed the **excruciating** burn on Dalip's arm.

inaugurate
in ō' gyər āt

v. 1. To install in office with a formal ceremony.

Presidents of the United States are **inaugurated** in January following the November election.

2. To begin officially or mark the opening of.

On Tuesday, Mayor Ovalles **inaugurated** a new program to help the homeless.

inauguration *n.* The act of installing in office.

Governor Maitland was at her desk within hours of her **inauguration**.

pervade
pər vād'

v. To spread throughout.

Laughter **pervades** the house whenever Aunt Sara visits us.

pervasive *adj.* Spreading throughout.

Long after the fire was extinguished, the **pervasive** odor of smoke remained in every room.



.....
Discuss with your partner some pervasive odors you enjoy, such as from a holiday or from cooking a favorite food.

proprietor
prə pri' ə tər

n. An owner of a store or other business.

The **proprietors** of the downtown shops planned a sidewalk sale for the first weekend in June.

pseudonym
sōō' də nīm

n. A fictitious name used by an author; a pen name.

Female British authors of the nineteenth century often had to use a male **pseudonym** in order to get their books published.



.....
Tell your partner what your pseudonym would be if you decided to write a book under a different name.

rebuff
rē buf'

- v.* 1. To reject bluntly.
Our teacher **rebuffed** all our requests to change the deadline for the project.
2. To drive back.
Although the men in the Alamo were determined to **rebuff** Santa Anna's forces, in the end they were defeated.
- n.* 1. A blunt rejection.
Caroline's offer to Frida to patch up their quarrel met with a **rebuff**.
2. An abrupt setback in progress.
After a storm delayed their start, the climbers experienced another **rebuff** when a rock slide shut down one of the trails.



.....
Talk to your partner about a time a friend rebuffed your plans.

resilient
rē zil' yənt

- adj.* 1. Capable of recovering quickly from misfortune.
After she lost her job, my mom was so **resilient**, she went out and found another one.
2. Returning quickly to an original shape or condition.
A wool sweater is more **resilient** after washing than a cotton one.
- resilience** *n.* 1. The ability to recover.
Stefano showed great **resilience** after he caught the flu.
2. The ability to spring back.
Tennis balls lose **resilience** after three or four sets of vigorous play.

turbulent
tɜr' byə lənt

- adj.* 1. Chaotic; unruly.
My brother and I tried our best to stay calm during the **turbulent** period of our parents' divorce.
2. Stormy; tempestuous.
Such a **turbulent** sea prevented all boats from leaving the harbor.
- turbulence** *n.* 1. Great disturbance or agitation.
The **turbulence** of the 1960s included peace marches, civil rights protests, and assassinations.
2. Rapid changes in wind speed and direction in the atmosphere.
The "Fasten Your Seatbelts" sign flashed on when the plane encountered **turbulence**.

1A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 1. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) To inaugurate someone is to (c) To rebuff someone is to
 (b) try to win that person's favor. (d) install that person in office.

2. (a) be unreliable or untrustworthy. (c) To be avid is to
 (b) have a strong desire for something. (d) To be resilient is to

3. (a) is to summon it from memory. (c) To pervade something
 (b) To emulate something (d) is to spread throughout it.

4. (a) one that is ignored. (c) A despicable comment is
 (b) one that deserves contempt. (d) A brusque comment is

5. (a) returns to its original shape. (c) Something that is evocative
 (b) Something that is resilient (d) is easily damaged.

6. (a) one that is favorable. (c) A brusque remark is
 (b) one that is abrupt in manner. (d) A concise remark is

7. (a) A proprietor is (c) a story made up on the spur of the moment.
 (b) a fictitious name. (d) A pseudonym is

| |
|--------------|
| avid |
| brusque |
| concise |
| demean |
| despicable |
| emulate |
| evoke |
| excruciating |
| inaugurate |
| pervade |
| proprietor |
| pseudonym |
| rebuff |
| resilient |
| turbulent |

8. (a) try to imitate that person. (c) To emulate someone is to
(b) try to influence that person. (d) To demean someone is to
-
-

9. (a) An evocative poem (c) is one that is difficult to understand.
(b) A concise poem (d) has the ability to bring back feelings.
-
-

10. (a) To demean someone is to (c) reject that person.
(b) To rebuff someone is to (d) praise that person.
-
-

1B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. The swelling in Denise's ankle was **so painful that she could hardly stand it**.
2. From Ms. Hernandez's **abrupt manner**, the students understood immediately that something was wrong.
3. The 1930s was a **very disturbed and agitated** decade in European history.
4. When the lawyer attempted to **harm the reputation of** the witness by calling her a liar, the judge intervened.
5. Who is the **person with the legal right to the ownership** of the furniture business?
6. Without any explanation, Emi **bluntly rejected** Brandon's offer to help change the tire.
7. Uncle Joshua used to be an **eager and enthusiastic** fan of the Hartford Whalers until the team moved to North Carolina and changed its name to the Carolina Hurricanes.

8. My family needs to be **able to recover quickly from misfortune** to survive in these difficult times.
9. The **installation** of the first president, George Washington, took place on April 30, 1789.
10. Ernest Hemingway wrote in a style that was **short and to the point**.

1c

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which of the following might employ a **pseudonym**?

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) a writer | (c) a president of a country |
| (b) a Supreme Court judge | (d) a small business |
2. Which of the following can have a **proprietor**?

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) a corner store | (c) a small business |
| (b) a small child | (d) a government agency |
3. Which of the following has **resilience**?

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| (a) a person | (c) a lawn |
| (b) a doormat | (d) a question |
4. Which of the following can be **pervasive**?

| | |
|-------------|-------------|
| (a) time | (c) fear |
| (b) silence | (d) a smell |
5. Which of the following can be **inaugurated**?

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| (a) a president | (c) a bad habit |
| (b) a delivery service | (d) a promise |
6. Which of the following can be **evoked**?

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) a loose tooth | (c) a happy memory |
| (b) a grudging response | (d) a broken ski pole |
7. Which of the following might suffer a **rebuff**?

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| (a) an announcement | (c) a proposal |
| (b) an attack | (d) a friendly gesture |

| |
|--------------|
| avid |
| brusque |
| concise |
| demean |
| despicable |
| emulate |
| evoke |
| excruciating |
| inaugurate |
| pervade |
| proprietor |
| pseudonym |
| rebuff |
| resilient |
| turbulent |

8. In which of the following might there be **turbulence**?
- (a) a relationship
 - (b) the air
 - (c) the ocean
 - (d) a lawn

1D

Word Study: Similar Meanings

Choose from the two words provided and use each word just once when completing each sentence. One space should be left blank.

brusque / abrupt

1. I was greeted with a(n) _____ “no” when I asked if I could help.
2. A(n) _____ person seems always to be in a hurry.
3. The bus came to a(n) _____ stop when a dog ran in front of it.

rebuff / reject

4. If you like, you can _____ another card from the top of the deck.
5. The soldiers were able to _____ the enemy’s charges.
6. The agency will _____ applications that are not properly signed and dated.

emulate / imitate

7. To walk on the moon is a feat that no one is likely to _____ anytime soon.
8. To _____ someone else’s answers during a test can get a student in serious trouble.
9. To _____ the sound of bird calls is quite an accomplishment.

demeaning / despicable

10. There is nothing _____ about asking for help if you need it.
11. There was a _____ expression on his face as he warned us of the danger.
12. It is _____ to buy a puppy and mistreat it.

turbulent / stormy

13. Everyone screamed as the _____ rapids almost overturned the raft.
14. The principal's voice grew _____ as he spoke of his concern for the school's future.
15. The forecast of _____ weather caused the cancellation of all ferry crossings.

1E

Vocabulary in Context

Read the passage.



A Poet of the People

Maya Angelou was honored by William Jefferson Clinton when he invited her to read a poem she had written to celebrate his **inauguration** as the forty-second president of the United States. This was a fitting tribute to the woman whose early life had seemed so empty of promise when she was born Marguerite Johnson in St. Louis, Missouri, sixty-four years before. She sums up that life **concisely** in these lines from one of her poems: “. . . birthing is hard / and dying is mean / and living's a trial in between.”

When she was still a small child, her parents divorced; she and her older brother Bailey were raised by their grandmother, Annie Henderson, affectionately known as Momma. Mrs. Henderson was the **proprietor** of the only general store in Stamps, Arkansas, owned by an African American. In her first book, *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings*, Angelou **evokes** Momma's powerful presence as she lovingly describes the way her grandmother coped with the bigotry and racial hatred that was widespread in the country in the 1930s. It was this **resilience** that most impressed Angelou and which she herself tried to **emulate** throughout her life.

One example of such bigotry involved a visit to the dentist. Angelou was suffering from an **excruciating** toothache. Momma had no choice but to take her granddaughter to the town's only dentist, who was white. When she asked him to treat the little girl's toothache, he **rebuffed** her, using extremely **demeaning** language. He told her that he would rather put his hand in a dog's mouth than treat a black person. Momma reminded him that she had helped him in the past by making him interest-free loans; now she was asking a favor

| |
|--------------|
| avid |
| brusque |
| concise |
| demean |
| despicable |
| emulate |
| evoke |
| excruciating |
| inaugurate |
| pervade |
| proprietor |
| pseudonym |
| rebuff |
| resilient |
| turbulent |

in return. But he **brusquely** asserted that his debts had been paid. He ordered her to leave. After taking her grandchild out of the office, Momma returned and stood her ground. She demanded that the dentist pay her a fair rate of interest on the loans she had made him. Finally, he handed over ten dollars, a large sum in those days. Only then did she depart, her dignity intact. She traveled over thirty miles with her granddaughter to Texarkana, where the nearest African-American dentist practiced.

When Angelou was eight years old, she and her brother went to live with their mother in St. Louis. There her mother's boyfriend abused her. He threatened to harm Bailey if she told anyone. When Angelou became ill, her mother discovered the **despicable** abuse. The boyfriend was brought to trial and convicted. But the shock of the experience left Angelou unable to speak for several years.

In spite of her troubled and **turbulent** childhood, a spirit of optimism **pervades** *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings*. In it, Angelou pays tribute to those who helped and encouraged her. Among them was a neighbor named Bertha Flowers. She gave Angelou books and introduced her to the pleasures of reading poetry, drama, and great novels. As a result of Flowers's influence, Angelou became an **avid** reader. This led later to her dream of becoming a writer. Four more volumes of autobiography and many collections of poetry followed *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings*. All appeared under her **pseudonym**, Maya Angelou, a name she began using in the 1950s.

It was a long and difficult road that she had traveled, but it led to the presidential platform where she read her poem "On the Pulse of Morning" to an audience of millions on that cold January day. Angelou had triumphed over many difficulties, strengthened by the deep faith expressed in these lines from the poem, "Lift up your hearts / Each new hour holds new chances / For a new beginning." She died peacefully in her sleep in 2014. A year later the U.S. Postal Service issued a special Maya Angelou stamp to honor her memory.

- **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. Why is it inaccurate to say that Momma was Mrs. Henderson's **pseudonym**?

2. Why would you not use the word **concise** to describe the title of Angelou's first book?

3. Why did Angelou compose "On the Pulse of Morning"?

4. Why did Mrs. Henderson have to be knowledgeable about business?

5. Why was Momma desperate to get her granddaughter to a dentist?

6. How did the dentist let Momma know that she was not welcome?

7. Why is Angelou's mother's boyfriend someone one would not **emulate**?

8. In what way did the dentist show **despicable** behavior?

9. What is the meaning of **evoke** as it is used in the passage?

10. What is one way that Angelou showed **resilience** in her life?

11. What was **turbulent** about Angelou's life immediately after her parents' divorce?

| |
|--------------|
| avid |
| brusque |
| concise |
| demean |
| despicable |
| emulate |
| evoke |
| excruciating |
| inaugurate |
| pervade |
| proprietor |
| pseudonym |
| rebuff |
| resilient |
| turbulent |

12. What details in the passage suggest that Bertha Flowers’s treatment of Angelou was not **brusque**?

13. How is *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings* a positive book?

14. How do you know that Angelou did not **rebuff** President Clinton’s request for a poem?

15. What is the meaning of **avid** as it is used in the passage?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- The original meaning of the verb **demean**, “to conduct oneself,” suggested neither good nor bad behavior. (Jane’s young cousins *demeaned* themselves in a proper manner during their stay with her.) Even though this meaning continues, a second meaning, “to act in a way that lowers one’s reputation or character,” has largely replaced it. (You *demean* yourself by asking favors of someone who you have treated so badly.)

The original meaning of the verb survives in *demeanor*, the noun form, which means “the manner in which one behaves or conducts oneself.” (No one could tell from Alonso’s *demeanor* that he was very angry.)

.....

- **Pseudonym**, a false name used by writers and others in place of their real name, is formed from the Greek roots *pseudo*, “false,” and *onuma*, “name.”

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

abrasion

ə brā' zhən

n. 1. A wearing away or rubbing away by friction.

This protective coating helps prevent **abrasion** of the floor tiles.

2. A scraped or worn area.

Natalie's fall during the basketball game resulted in an **abrasion** on her knee.

abrasive *adj.* 1. Causing wear by rubbing.

Don't use this **abrasive** cleaner on the vinyl bathtub because it will scratch the surface.

2. Harsh or rough in manner; irritating.

The bus driver's **abrasive** tone made the excited children settle down in their seats.



.....
Discuss with your partner why someone might act in an abrasive way.

clad

klad

adj. Clothed or covered.

Clad in a black rubber suit, the diver jumped from the side of the rescue boat.

corroborate

kə rāb' ə rāt

v. To provide evidence to make more certain; to confirm.

Because he was standing at the stoplight when the accident occurred, Javier could **corroborate** the driver's statement.



.....
Corroborate for your partner the date and time.

cursory

kɜr' sə rē

adj. Done in a hurry and with little attention to detail.

Sherlock Holmes made a **cursory** search of the bedroom before going into the dining room to question the family.

dehydrate

dē hī' drāt

v. 1. To remove the water from.

We use the oven to **dehydrate** apples, and then we add the dried fruit to our homemade granola.

2. To cause to lose bodily fluids.

The hot, dry desert air **dehydrated** the hikers, who had not brought enough water.

dehydration *n.* The state of being dehydrated.

Dehydration from the drought has caused the plants to wilt.



.....
Show your partner how you might act if you were suffering from dehydration.

derive
di rīv'

v. 1. To take or receive from a source.
After practicing so diligently, Hugo **derived** great satisfaction from the enthusiastic applause following his performance.

2. To obtain through reasoning.
We **derived** the answer to the question by applying logic.



.....
Share with your partner whom or what you derive comfort from in times of unhappiness.

electrify
ē lek' trə fi

v. 1. To wire or equip with electric power.
As the population of India grows, the government is working hard to make sure all areas of the country are **electrified**.

2. To thrill or shock.
Marissa's skating performance, which included a layback spin and several perfectly executed triple axels, **electrified** the audience.

endeavor
en dev' ər

v. To attempt earnestly.
The person we spoke to at the school office said she would **endeavor** to find the papers we needed.

n. A serious, earnest effort toward a goal.
Arthur's **endeavor** to score twenty points a game throughout the season was a success.



.....
Tell your partner about something you are endeavoring to accomplish this year.

gingerly
jin' jər lē

adj. Cautious; very careful.
Mr. Wu made a **gingerly** attempt to finish the science experiment without spilling the liquid.
adv. Extremely cautiously.
Ella ran her tongue **gingerly** over where her wisdom tooth had been extracted.

grimace
grim' əs

v. To make a face expressing feelings of pain, disgust, or contempt.
Hana **grimaced** when her computer froze and she realized she'd lost her book report.

n. A facial expression that seems to express pain, contempt, or disgust.
A **grimace** crossed his face when he twisted his ankle on the sidewalk.

gruesome
grūō' səm

adj. Causing horror or disgust.
The book told the **gruesome** details of living in Europe during the time of the Black Plague.

inventory
in' vən tōr ē

n. 1. A list of possessions or goods on hand.
Before buying school supplies for the coming year, we make an **inventory** of all the supplies we already have.

2. The stock of goods on hand.
The store's **inventory** of sheets and blankets was very low after the winter sale.

v. To make a complete list of.
Once a year, the librarian **inventories** books and software in the resource center.

simulate
sim' yōō lāt

v. 1. To take on the qualities of another; to imitate.
AstroTurf **simulates** real grass.

2. To pretend.
Although Riana **simulated** friendship, I wondered if she just wanted to copy my homework.

simulated *adj.* Made to look genuine while being artificial.
Simulated leather looks and feels like the real thing.

simulation *n.* An imitation of a possible situation.
The **simulation** of an explosion gave the emergency crews a chance to practice rescue procedures.



.....
Simulate your partner's actions for ten seconds and then switch.

succumb
sə kum'

v. 1. To give up or give in to; to yield.
After twenty-four hours on their feet, the relief workers **succumbed** to exhaustion, falling soundly asleep on their cots.

2. To cease to exist; to die.
Smallpox was so pervasive in the eighteenth century that many people **succumbed**.

surmise
sər mīz'

v. To suppose something without sufficient evidence.
Heloise **surmised** that her visitors were late because of traffic.

n. A guess.
My **surmise** is that they are planning a surprise party for my birthday.



.....
Tell your partner what you surmise will happen in a movie you want to see.

2A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in **bold** is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

1. (a) In 1878, Thomas Edison began the process of **electrifying** the country. ____
 (b) The actress gave an **electrifying** performance. ____
 (c) The former senator was **electrified** by the people to be president. ____
 (d) Write down what you want to **electrify** for the school project. ____

2. (a) The tomatoes are **dehydrated** from being left in the sun to dry. ____
 (b) Drink the hot tea to warm up and **dehydrate**. ____
 (c) **Dehydration** is cured by drinking water. ____
 (d) **Dehydration** is used to extinguish wildfires. ____

3. (a) Do you like the beginning or the **endeavor** of the novel best? ____
 (b) Judges **endeavor** to apply the law fairly. ____
 (c) The girl will **endeavor** to get an A on the test. ____
 (d) Scott's **endeavor** to reach the South Pole made him a national hero. ____

4. (a) Young children need to be **simulated** to learn to read. ____
 (b) An actor **simulates** a range of human emotions. ____
 (c) Training programs for astronauts attempt to **simulate** real-life situations in space. ____
 (d) Reading about Africa **simulated** my interest in visiting. ____

5. (a) The longer he was kept waiting, the more **cursorly** Asif became. ____
 (b) A **cursorly** search helped them quickly find the car keys. ____
 (c) A **cursorly** glance told the teacher that everyone was studying. ____
 (d) I checked the schedule to see what dates the **cursorly** team was in town. ____

6. (a) Cuts and **abrasions** were treated in the First Aid tent. ____
 (b) Coach Allen's **abrasive** manner made him unpopular with the students. ____
 (c) The **abrasive** sand rubbed her foot uncomfortably. ____
 (d) The **abrasion** on the water was smooth and calm. ____

7. (a) Try not to **succumb** to your doubts. ____
 (b) More soldiers **succumbed** to disease than died in the war. ____
 (c) The apples are **succumbing** ripe on the tree. ____
 (d) I like to **succumb** in my favorite armchair with a good book. ____

| |
|-------------|
| abrasion |
| clad |
| corroborate |
| cursorly |
| dehydrate |
| derive |
| electrify |
| endeavor |
| gingerly |
| grimace |
| gruesome |
| inventory |
| simulate |
| succumb |
| surmise |

8. (a) Please don't **derive** me when I'm talking to you. ____
 (b) Chocolate is **derived** from the cacao plant. ____
 (c) Both sides **derive** benefits from the agreement. ____
 (d) The children were **derived** their favorite toys. ____
9. (a) We **surmised** our tickets for the movie. ____
 (b) The price of gasoline was **surmised** to be on the rise. ____
 (c) As to what comes next, your **surmise** is as good as mine. ____
 (d) The astronomer **surmised** that the universe has an end. ____
10. (a) Janice **corroborated** what her parents had guessed. ____
 (b) You better be able to **corroborate** that you're too sick to go to school. ____
 (c) I can't believe she **corroborated** his story. ____
 (d) Many celebrities **corroborate** to write a book. ____

2B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *clothing*?
 (a) garment (b) endeavor (c) clad (d) attire
2. Which word or words go with *very careful*?
 (a) cursory (b) anguish (c) buoyant (d) gingerly
3. Which word or words go with *face*?
 (a) simulate (b) grimace (c) sneer (d) surmise
4. Which word or words go with *horrible*?
 (a) abrasive (b) monstrous (c) tranquil (d) gruesome
5. Which word or words go with *business*?
 (a) abrasion (b) cursory (c) inventory (d) budget
6. Which word or words go with *confirm*?
 (a) derive (b) corroborate (c) succumb (d) capitulate
7. Which word or words go with *attempt*?
 (a) venture (b) surmise (c) endeavor (d) simulate

8. Which word or words go with *pretend*?
 (a) assume (b) simulate (c) grimace (d) succumb
9. Which word or words go with *death*?
 (a) corroborate (b) succumb (c) perish (d) simulate
10. Which word or words go with *guess*?
 (a) simulate (b) derive (c) surmise (d) grimace

2c

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. A **grimace**

- (a) told me that Taj didn't like the idea of going to the party.
- (b) on the principal's face made him look unfriendly.
- (c) in the ice was narrowly avoided by the skaters.
- (d) in the calculations was quickly corrected.

2. A **gruesome**

- (a) attempt was made to save the library, but it proved unsuccessful.
- (b) story about the history of surgery was published last month.
- (c) mix of hay and oats provided food for the horses.
- (d) sea monster attacked the ship in the movie.

3. An **inventory**

- (a) of items needed for summer camp was given to the campers' parents.
- (b) that changed history was the steam engine.
- (c) of the clothes in my suitcase revealed I had forgotten socks.
- (d) should be set out to dry regularly.

4. He was **clad**

- (a) two ways and just couldn't make up his mind.
- (b) in deep thought and didn't hear me when I spoke.
- (c) in a suit of armor at the medieval costume party.
- (d) as a Scottish warrior when he played Macbeth on stage.

| |
|-------------|
| abrasion |
| clad |
| corroborate |
| cursory |
| dehydrate |
| derive |
| electrify |
| endeavor |
| gingerly |
| grimace |
| gruesome |
| inventory |
| simulate |
| succumb |
| surmise |

5. **Abrasiveness**

- (a) works best when the colors are carefully matched with each other.
- (b) in a person can make others uncomfortable.
- (c) can be smoothed with the right polish.
- (d) reminds me of the time I spent at sea.

6. We **derived**

- (a) pleasure from seeing our friend succeed.
- (b) clean water from the river by using a filter.
- (c) the bike to the park after school.
- (d) the answer to the problem.

7. To **electrify**

- (a) the girl to student council, you need to vote.
- (b) the class, the science teacher showed them an amazing experiment.
- (c) a crowd you have to win them over and make them love you.
- (d) the entire country would change people's lives.

8. A **gingerly**

- (a) attempt at making a cake for the first time ended surprisingly in a triumph.
- (b) puppy bounced all over the room with enthusiasm.
- (c) taste is achieved by adding cinnamon.
- (d) walk along the circus tightrope ended in applause.

2D

Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. I **derive** a lot of satisfaction from

_____ .

2. Today I am **clad** in

_____ .

3. When I take a test, I **endeavor** to

_____ .

4. If I **inventoried** my sock drawer, I would find

_____ .

5. If a statement is **corroborated**, that means

_____ .

6. A room that is a **simulation** of a desert would feel

_____ .

7. A junk-food craving I sometimes **succumb** to is

_____ .

8. Another word for a **surmise** about something is a:

_____ .

9. Something I would handle **gingerly** is

_____ .

10. If something is **cursory**, that means it is

_____ .

2E

Vocabulary in Context

Read the passage.



The Iceman

The date was September 19, 1991. A German couple, returning from a day of hiking in the ten-thousand-foot-high Otztaler region of the Alps made a **gruesome** discovery. The head and shoulders of a body protruded from the glacial ice in a shallow trench in the rock. With the nose and upper lip twisted up to the side, the face was set in a terrible **grimace**. The couple believed they had discovered some unfortunate hiker. They reported their find at the mountain lodge where they were spending the night.

The first **endeavors** by mountain rescuers to free the body were unsuccessful; the location was remote, and winter weather was beginning. A day or two later, the police asked medical experts from Innsbruck to assist in the recovery. Flying by helicopter to the site, they proceeded in a **gingerly** manner to chip away the ice until the body was free. Quickly placing it in a plastic body bag, they had it transported to Innsbruck for examination.

There it was stored in a freezer that **simulated** the conditions on the mountain. At the same time, an **inventory** of the objects found with or near the body was taken. Because some of these items appeared to be at least a hundred years old and to have historical significance, scientists at the

| |
|-------------|
| abrasion |
| clad |
| corroborate |
| cursory |
| dehydrate |
| derive |
| electrify |
| endeavor |
| gingerly |
| grimace |
| gruesome |
| inventory |
| simulate |
| succumb |
| surmise |

University of Innsbruck were consulted. When they estimated that the find was four thousand years old, everyone was astounded. Further tests established that the remains were actually 5,300 years old, an age later **corroborated** by tests at several independent institutions.

Scientists were **electrified** by the discovery. Not only would they be able to study the man's body, but also they would be able to **derive** information from his clothing and equipment about the age in which he had lived, the Late Neolithic period or Late Stone Age. A **cursory** examination of the body showed it to be in a remarkable state of preservation. Scientists believed that soon after the man **succumbed** to the cold, his body was **dehydrated** by the dry, icy winds of the high Alps. Subsequently, it was buried in snow, which filled the trench. As time passed this turned into packed ice, sealing the body and protecting it from harmful exposure to the air.

Further investigation revealed several interesting details. From the **abrasion** of his front teeth and the wear on his joints, scientists estimated the man's age at death to have been somewhere between thirty and forty years. His height was just over five feet. He had been **clad** in neatly sewn deerskin garments, with a grass cape to keep out the cold. With him were an ax with a long wooden handle, an unfinished bow, and a leather quiver filled with arrows. He also had a small leather pouch containing a flint scraper, some arrow tips, and a small knife.

At first, scientists were puzzled by several tattoos on the man's body—a blue cross on the back of one knee and a number of small parallel lines grouped together on his back and ankles. But examinations indicated that in each of these places the man's joints and bones showed wear or injury. The scientists **surmised** that the markings may have been associated with some kind of primitive medical treatment.

In 2016, a team of scientists thawed the body to make possible a more complete examination. They worked quickly, and afterward, the body was frozen again to preserve it. An arrowhead was found buried in the Iceman's left shoulder that had pierced a major artery. Death would have followed very quickly. The contents of his stomach showed that he had enjoyed a large meal and was digesting it when he was taken by surprise and shot from behind.

Otzi, as the Iceman is called, has given us a revealing glimpse of life in the Late Stone Age. Both his well-preserved body and the clothing and tools that were with him are unique remains of a time before writing or cities had come into existence.

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. How do we know that the Iceman had been prepared for cold weather?

2. What is the meaning of **succumb** as it is used in the passage?

3. What did the German climbers **surmise** about their discovery?

4. What kind of **abrasion** did scientists examine on the Iceman?

5. Would you describe this story of the Iceman as **gruesome**? Explain your answer.

6. Why was it necessary to remove the body from the ice in a **gingerly** manner?

7. Why do you think it was important to place the body in conditions that **simulated** those on the mountain?

8. From the **inventory** of items found with his body, what conclusions would you draw about the Iceman's life?

| |
|-------------|
| abrasion |
| clad |
| corroborate |
| cursory |
| dehydrate |
| derive |
| electrify |
| endeavor |
| gingerly |
| grimace |
| gruesome |
| inventory |
| simulate |
| succumb |
| surmise |

9. What are three things the scientists learned about the Iceman that could not be determined by a **cursory** examination?

10. How can we be certain that the body was 5,300 years old?

11. Why do you think the Iceman's face looked as it did?

12. How did weather conditions in the Alps preserve the body?

13. What was the first step after the body was discovered?

14. What information could the scientists **derive** from the amount of wear on the Iceman's teeth?

15. Why would it be inaccurate to say that scientists had no interest in the Iceman?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

-
- The prefix *de-* has a number of meanings, including “to remove.” To *dethrone* a king is to remove him from the throne. This prefix is combined with the Greek root *hydro*, “water,” to form **dehydrate**. To *dehydrate* something is to remove the water from it. Other words formed from *hydro* include: *hydrogen*, “a gas that combines with oxygen to form water,” and *hydrant*, “a closed pipe with a spout from which water is drawn to fight fires.”
-
- An adjective is usually changed into an adverb by adding the *-ly* suffix; a *slow* driver is someone who drives *slowly*. But what if the adjective itself ends in *-ly*, as is the case with

gingerly? Faced with writing *gingerlyly* as the adverbial form, users of the English language wisely decided that the adjective and adverb forms would be the same.

-
- **Simulate** means “to imitate.” (An animal will sometimes prevent an attack by *simulating* death.) Don’t confuse this word with *stimulate*, which means “to make active.” (Light *stimulates* growth in plants.) A word related to *simulate* is *dissimulate*, which means “to hide one’s true feelings” or “to put up a false appearance.” (The judge’s penetrating questions made it very difficult for the witness to *dissimulate*.)

| |
|-------------|
| abrasion |
| clad |
| corroborate |
| cursory |
| dehydrate |
| derive |
| electrify |
| endeavor |
| gingerly |
| grimace |
| gruesome |
| inventory |
| simulate |
| succumb |
| surmise |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

anonymous

ə nən' ə məs

adj. Of an unknown source or unrevealed name.

We wish we could thank the person who gave this **anonymous** donation to our library fund.



.....
Discuss with your partner an anonymous deed you could do that would help another person.

anthology

an thəl' ə jē

n. A collection of various writings, such as songs, stories, or poems.

This **anthology** of science-fiction stories includes some by Ray Bradbury, Julian May, and Ursula Le Guin.

conjecture

kən jek' chər

n. A conclusion based on guesswork or insufficient evidence.

Dad's **conjecture** that the derelict building would be a problem proved to be correct when it caught on fire.

v. To form an opinion while lacking sufficient evidence.

The fire chief **conjectured** that oily rags may have been the cause of the fire.



.....
Conjecture with your partner how big the universe is.

disposition

dis pə zish' ən

n. 1. A person's usual mood; temperament.

People enjoy Alice's company because of her sunny **disposition**.

2. A regular tendency or inclination.

Roberto's **disposition** to argue about everything can sometimes get him into trouble.

encompass

en kəm' pəs

v. 1. To enclose or encircle.

Except for one narrow pass, mountains **encompass** the village of Neudorf on all sides.

2. To include.

Our studies this year **encompass** science, math, social studies, and English.



.....
Share with your partner some things your dreams at night encompass.

extricate

eks' tri kət

v. To free from a difficult or tangled situation.

Extricating our bags from the bus's crowded storage area was much simpler than we thought it would be.

generation
jen ə r ā ´ shən

- n.* 1. One step in the line of descent of a family.
Four **generations** were represented at Naomi’s family reunion last summer.
2. All the people born and living about the same time.
My grandfather’s **generation** lived through the Civil Rights Movement and the Vietnam War.
3. The average span of time between the birth of parents and their children.
Within one **generation** this town became a city.



.....
Chat with your partner about how the people of your generation communicate most often, such as by talking, e-mailing, or texting.

guile
gīl

- n.* Cunning or deceit in dealing with others; trickery.
The Grimm brothers vividly described the wolf’s **guile** toward Little Red Riding Hood.

imperative
im per ´ ə tiv

- adj.* 1. Urgent; pressing.
It is **imperative** that I finish this English assignment before tomorrow’s deadline.
2. Having the power or authority to command.
Because of the **imperative** tone of the letter, Ida began immediately to reply.



.....
Tell your partner about something imperative you need to do soon.

instill
in stil ´

- v.* To introduce gradually in order to establish securely.
Juanita’s love of animals was **instilled** in her during the summer vacations spent at her uncle’s farm as a child.

modify
mə d ´ ə fi

- v.* 1. To make less extreme or severe.
My parents agreed to **modify** my weekend curfew after I promised to study Monday through Thursday evenings.
2. To make changes in.
The teenagers **modified** their language when they tutored young children after school.
3. In grammar, to limit or restrict in meaning.
In the phrase *the black chair*, the adjective *black* **modifies** the noun *chair*.



.....
Talk with your partner about how you might like to modify your hairstyle.

pivot
piv'ət

n. 1. A small bar or rod on which something else turns.
The gate swung shut easily on its well-oiled **pivot**.

2. A person or thing on which others depend.
The quarterback is the **pivot** of a team's offense.

v. To turn on or as if on a pivot.
A weathervane **pivots** when the wind changes direction.

pivotal *adj.* Vitally important; significant.
The first human landing on Mars will be a **pivotal** event in the history of space exploration.

prevalent
prev'ələnt

adj. Commonly occurring; widely accepted or practiced.
Both chicken pox and the flu were **prevalent** in Edison Middle School last winter.



.....
Discuss with your partner what style of clothing is prevalent in your school.

recur
rē'kʏr'

v. 1. To come up again or to happen again.
The same musical themes **recur** throughout all the movies in the series.
2. To come to mind again.
The events of the night of the concert **recurred** to Maddox many times during the next few weeks.

recurrence *n.* The act of recurring.
Engineers hope that the new dam will prevent a **recurrence** of flooding.

spontaneous
spän'tā'nēəs

adj. 1. Voluntary and unplanned.
The crowd burst into a **spontaneous** chant of "Go! Go! Go!" as the first two runners neared the finish line.
2. Occurring or produced without human labor.
My abuelo thought the **spontaneous** appearance of the tomato plants was because of seeds dropped by birds.

spontaneity *n.* (spän'tənē'ətē) The quality or condition of occurring in an unplanned way.
With unexpected **spontaneity**, Isabelle rose to embrace her friend.

3A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 3. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) be commonly accepted. (c) To be prevalent is to
(b) To be pivotal is to (d) occur without a known cause.

2. (a) Guile is (c) a failure to take proper precautions.
(b) Conjecture is (d) cunning or deceit in dealing with others.

3. (a) To modify something is to (c) To extricate something is to
(b) set it free. (d) restore it to its proper place.

4. (a) A recurrence is (c) a handwritten document.
(b) An anthology is (d) a collection of writings.

5. (a) An anonymous donation (c) is one made without previous thought.
(b) A spontaneous donation (d) is one made with conditions attached.

6. (a) To instill something is to (c) To modify something is to
(b) bring it to an end. (d) make changes to it.

7. (a) A recurring event is one (c) that is of great importance.
(b) A pivotal event is one (d) that cannot be repeated.

8. (a) To encompass something is to (c) To instill something is to
(b) prevent it from occurring. (d) enclose or encircle it.

9. (a) a carefully planned event. (c) A conjecture is
 (b) all those born around the same time period. (d) A generation is
-
-

10. (a) An anonymous statement (c) An imperative statement
 (b) is one expressing authority. (d) is one that is handwritten.
-
-

3B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in **bold** with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

- The detective refused to make a **judgment based on insufficient evidence** when asked about the time of the robbery.
- As soon as Paul Revere knew how the British soldiers were approaching Boston, it was **extremely urgent** that he ride to Lexington with the information.
- The author of the concise sixteenth-century poem "O Western Wind" is **someone whose name is not known**.
- While you are at the library, will you look for this **collection of writings** of Bolivian authors?
- Looking at the color and composition of the children's drawings, I was struck by their **unplanned and natural manner**.
- At the Air Force Academy, the instructors try to **introduce gradually** a strong sense of duty in the minds of all cadets.
- After the hurricane, we hoped that a terrible storm would not ever **happen again**.
- Rafael has a **regular tendency** to do things in a careful, thorough manner.

| |
|-------------|
| anonymous |
| anthology |
| conjecture |
| disposition |
| encompass |
| extricate |
| generation |
| guile |
| imperative |
| instill |
| modify |
| pivot |
| prevalent |
| recur |
| spontaneous |

9. This **group of people born at about the same time** was given the name "Generation Z."

10. The gigantic telescope was attached to a huge pin that allowed the machine to **turn freely in a circle**.

3C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which of the following is expressed in an **imperative** manner?
(a) "Go to your room!" (c) "Can you turn down the volume?"
(b) "Are you ready?" (d) "Don't do that!"
- Which of the following could have a **recurrence**?
(a) a toothache (c) a nightmare
(b) an illness (d) a child's first birthday
- Which of the following could be **modified**?
(a) an adjective (c) a plan
(b) a building (d) time
- Which of the following is a **generation**?
(a) the time between the birth of a parent and his child (c) the life span of a plant
(b) all the people born around 1990 (d) the members of your family
- Which of the following might be included in an **anthology**?
(a) a play (c) a short story
(b) a poem (d) a three-volume biography
- Which of the following could be **instilled**?
(a) manners (c) values
(b) punishment (d) ideas
- Which of the following could be **spontaneous**?
(a) a nosebleed (c) a decision
(b) laughter (d) an inventory

8. Which of the following could describe a person's **disposition**?

- (a) grouchy (c) tall
 (b) pleasant (d) handsome

3D

Word Study: Synonyms and Antonyms

Each group of four words contains either two synonyms or two antonyms. Circle that pair. Then circle the S if they are synonyms or the A if they are antonyms.

- | | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|------------|---|---|
| 1. instill | pivot | turn | recur | S | A |
| 2. anonymous | imperative | unknown | avid | S | A |
| 3. encompass | exclude | conjecture | praise | S | A |
| 4. imperative | turbulent | urgent | cursory | S | A |
| 5. prevalent | cheap | resilient | rare | S | A |
| 6. spontaneous | pivotal | important | wealthy | S | A |
| 7. guess | corroborate | rebuff | conjecture | S | A |
| 8. modify | recover | recur | change | S | A |
| 9. disposition | guile | innocence | endeavor | S | A |
| 10. remove | extricate | encompass | rebuff | S | A |

| |
|-------------|
| anonymous |
| anthology |
| conjecture |
| disposition |
| encompass |
| extricate |
| generation |
| guile |
| imperative |
| instill |
| modify |
| pivot |
| prevalent |
| recur |
| spontaneous |



Telling Tales

The invention of writing, more than five thousand years ago, was a **pivotal** event in human history; indeed, without it there could be no recorded history. But even before writing began, stories existed, often in the form of folk tales. This much older spoken tradition probably goes back to the very beginnings of language itself. Folk tales did not need to be written in order to be preserved. They were passed on by word of mouth from one **generation** to the next. Most were **anonymous** and the work of many different people. As the tale was told and retold, it changed. Each teller **modified** it to fit a particular audience.

One famous collection of folk tales, first recorded around the fourteenth century, is *The Arabian Nights*, also called *One Thousand and One Nights*. The title comes from the efforts of the storyteller, Scheherazade, to keep her husband, the king of what is now India and Indochina, from killing her. She stopped each night's story at a suspenseful point. That way, her husband would allow her to live one more night to tell its ending. Scholars think that many of these tales may have originated in Syria and Egypt, while others could have come from India. Their actual origin, however, remains a matter of **conjecture**.

Not until the early nineteenth century was a serious attempt made to give European folk tales a permanent written form. In Germany, two brothers, Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm, collected hundreds of folk tales from all parts of the country. They published them in an **anthology**, now well known as *Grimm's Fairy Tales*. In its pages Rapunzel, Hansel and Gretel, Cinderella, and Little Red Riding Hood make their first appearance in print.

One purpose of folk tales may have been to entertain. But that was not their only function. The reason they have survived for so long and are so **prevalent** in all human societies is that they educate their audiences. They seek to **instill** values that the society may consider **imperative** for its survival, such as a sense of right and wrong or the need for self-reliance. In addition to providing models for appropriate behavior, they give explanations, often derived from folklore, of the origin and meaning of the natural world.

Scholars have been struck by how frequently the same situations **recur** in folk tales from many different places; over three hundred versions of the

Cinderella story, for example, have been identified. Perhaps the same stories appeared **spontaneously** in many distant societies. Or perhaps they were spread by travelers and adapted to fit the needs of their listeners. In addition to the same stories, the same themes are also found again and again. One of the commonest is the use of **guile** as a weapon of the helpless against the powerful. There are no better examples of this than the *Uncle Remus* stories of Joel Chandler Harris, based on African American folk tales of the American South.

One of the funniest of the Uncle Remus stories tells of Brer Rabbit, who falls into the clutches of Brer Fox. He begs his captor not to throw him into the briar patch, saying he would rather be drowned. Brer Fox, being of a mean **disposition**, promptly does what his victim has begged him not to do. Brer Rabbit, of course, **extricates** himself with ease from the briar patch. He mocks Brer Fox as he scampers away by calling out that he was “bred and born” in a briar patch.

Folk tales, coming from every part of the globe, **encompass** the whole of human experience. From their early beginnings, long before the dawn of history, until the fairly recent past, they had no competition from other forms of entertainment. Today, the Internet, videos, television, books, and movies compete for children’s attention. Is there a danger that in the future folk tales will survive only in scholarly collections? Probably not as long as children, snuggled in their beds, experience the magic that begins with the spoken words, “Once upon a time.”

| |
|-------------|
| anonymous |
| anthology |
| conjecture |
| disposition |
| encompass |
| extricate |
| generation |
| guile |
| imperative |
| instill |
| modify |
| pivot |
| prevalent |
| recur |
| spontaneous |

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. Why was it **imperative** that Scheherazade keep the king entertained?

2. What is the meaning of **generation** as it is used in the passage?

3. Why are the Grimm brothers **pivotal** figures in the history of folk tales?

4. How would you describe the temperament of Scheherazade's husband?

5. Who first made up the stories of Cinderella and Little Red Riding Hood?

6. Why would it be inaccurate to say that Scheherazade's stories were **spontaneous**?

7. In which parts of the world do folk tales commonly occur?

8. What purpose do folk tales have besides being entertaining?

9. Why do you think folk tales using the theme of **guile** are so common?

10. Why did Brer Rabbit ask to be thrown into the briar patch?

11. Why do you think the same themes **recur** in folk tales from different countries?

12. What is *The Arabian Nights*?

13. What is the meaning of **encompass** as it is used in the passage?

14. In what way might a written folk tale differ from a spoken one?

15. What **conjecture** is made in the passage about the age of folk tales?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- A person who collects the best writings of different authors or poets and arranges them into an **anthology** could be compared to a person who gathers a variety of flowers and arranges them into a bouquet. If this comparison seems a little far-fetched, consider the origin of the word *anthology*. It comes from two Greek words, *anthos*, "flower," and *legein*, "to gather."

.....

- In addition to the definitions given in the word list, **imperative** has a grammatical meaning. It is the name for the mood of a verb used in giving orders or commands. In the sentence, "Stop him from crossing the street!", the verb *stop* is in the *imperative* mood.

.....

- William Shakespeare (1564–1616) is rightly regarded as one of the world's great writers; yet it would seem that he couldn't spell his own name! Samples of his signature that have survived show his name spelled in several different ways. Such variation, however, was common then with the spelling of many words, not just names. Not until the eighteenth century when dictionaries came into use was a single spelling for each word accepted as correct. A few words, however, escaped being standardized in this way; **instill** (which can also be spelled *instil*) is one of them. When a dictionary gives two different spellings of a word, the one given first is preferred.

| |
|-------------|
| anonymous |
| anthology |
| conjecture |
| disposition |
| encompass |
| extricate |
| generation |
| guile |
| imperative |
| instill |
| modify |
| pivot |
| prevalent |
| recur |
| spontaneous |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

abhor

ab hŏr'

v. To shrink from in disgust; to detest.

We **abhor** cruelty in all its forms.

abhorrent *adj.* Disgusting; causing loathing.

Any form of discrimination is **abhorrent** to decent people.



.....
Talk to your partner about a food that is abhorrent to you.

affable

af' ə bəl

adj. Pleasant; approachable; gracious.

Maribel's **affable** manner brought her many friends.

affability *n.* Friendliness of manner.

The counselor welcomed the young campers with such **affability** that no one felt homesick.



.....
Show your partner some facial expressions that would demonstrate affability.

amiss

ə mis'

adv. In a wrong or imperfect way.

Don't take **amiss** my suggestion for improving your drawing.

adj. Out of order; wrong.

Although the door was wide open when we got home late, nothing seemed **amiss** at first.

despondent

də spän' dənt

adj. Depressed from loss of hope or confidence; utterly discouraged.

I was completely **despondent** that our dog had run away.

entreat

en trēt'

v. To ask earnestly; to beg.

"Please, please, let me have a lizard," Augustin **entreated** his parents. "I promise to take care of it!"

entreaty *n.* A plea or earnest request.

The umpire ignored the coach's **entreaties** to reverse the call.

haunt

hŏnt

v. 1. To stay in one's mind continually.

Even though I heard the song a year ago, the music continues to **haunt** me.

2. To visit frequently.

Jeremy **haunted** the mall, hoping to catch a glimpse of his old friend.

3. To appear in the form of a ghost.

The Headless Horseman **haunted** the hollow where Ichabod Crane rode his horse.



.....
Share with your partner a character from a story or movie who haunts you.

impel
im pel'

v. 1. To drive or to propel.
A raging current **impelled** their raft downstream toward the waterfall.
2. To urge or drive by force or moral pressure.
Hatred of slavery **impelled** Harriet Tubman to return repeatedly to the South to help other enslaved people escape.

interminable
in tər' mi nə bəl



adj. Endless; seeming to be without end.
We had an **interminable** wait at the amusement park entrance because of the enormous crowds trying to get in.

.....
Tell your partner about a time when you had to complete an interminable amount of homework.

irascible
i ras' ə bəl

adj. Quick-tempered; irritable.
My grandfather looked kindly, but he was really quite **irascible**.

profound
prō found'



adj. 1. Intense; deeply felt.
Parents who had been separated from their children at the beginning of the war felt **profound** joy when they were reunited in the refugee camp.
2. Having understanding or knowledge that goes beneath the surface, beyond the obvious.
Profound insights from Thoreau and Gandhi influenced Martin Luther King Jr.'s ideas about nonviolent protest.

.....
Discuss with your partner a person you know who has profound knowledge about a particular subject. Who is the person, and what is the subject?

recluse
rek' lōōs

n. A person who lives apart from society and often alone.
Ahmed became a **recluse** when he was trying to finish writing his book, refusing to leave his apartment for days on end.
reclusive adj. Withdrawn from society.
Our neighbors are so **reclusive** that we hardly see them from one year to the next.

reverberate
rē vər' bər āt

v. To be repeated as in a series of echoes or vibrations.
We loved to hear our shouts **reverberate** as we ran through the old tunnel.

sage
sāj



adj. Having wisdom and good judgment.
Ben Franklin's *Poor Richard's Almanack* offered **sage** advice to the colonists.
n. 1. A person known for wisdom and good judgment.
When I need advice, I consult my grandmother, the family **sage**.
2. An aromatic grayish-green plant used in cooking.
Sage and onion are essential ingredients for a good turkey stuffing.

.....
Talk to your partner about some sage words you might say to a friend in trouble.

tirade
tī' rād



n. A long, angry speech.

We lost interest in Marni's endless **tirades** about how people disrespected her.

.....
Discuss with your partner how to talk to someone who constantly goes on tirades about his or her problems. How can you change the subject?

tremulous
trem' yōō lās

adj. 1. Marked by trembling or shaking.

The little girl tried to look brave when she fell and scraped her knee, but her **tremulous** lower lip betrayed her.

2. Timid or fearful.

In a **tremulous** voice, Alejandro told us how he had lost our money.

4A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in **bold** is used correctly, write **C** on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write **I** on the line.

- (a) Odd noises in the night convinced Sasha that the house was **haunted**. ____

(b) Many children are **haunted** by the idea of ghosts under the bed. ____

(c) Suki **haunted** her aunt to let her stay longer. ____

(d) The reporter **haunted** the major-league clubhouses, looking for good stories. ____
- (a) "Stay in school" is **sage** advice to anyone thinking of dropping out. ____

(b) The old **sage** was born many years ago and is an inspiration to many. ____

(c) **Sage** is a small evergreen shrub used in cooking. ____

(d) The repair work will be done in three separate **sages**. ____
- (a) After one of his lengthy **tirades** about taxes, he would always fall asleep. ____

(b) Jin tried to convince the **tirade** to join him. ____

(c) Her **tirades** often happen when she hasn't eaten breakfast. ____

(d) The **tirade** brought six inches of rain to coastal areas. ____
- (a) Woodchucks live in underground **abhors** where they feel safe. ____

(b) We were taught to **abhor** bigotry in all its forms. ____

(c) Cheating is **abhorrent** to everything the school stands for. ____

(d) The soft meadow was beautiful and **abhorrent**. ____

| |
|--------------|
| abhor |
| affable |
| amiss |
| despondent |
| entreat |
| haunt |
| impel |
| interminable |
| irascible |
| profound |
| recluse |
| reverberate |
| sage |
| tirade |
| tremulous |

5. (a) By September the grapes are **affable** and ready to be picked. ____
(b) The principal's **affable** manner made him well liked. ____
(c) The **affability** of the soil makes growing crops difficult. ____
(d) We should all strive for honesty and **affability**. ____
6. (a) If anything seems **amiss**, please tell me. ____
(b) My letter to my grandma went **amiss**, and she never received it. ____
(c) He took **amiss** my remark that he might want to work on his singing. ____
(d) Every time the dog went **amiss**, we knew she would come back. ____
7. (a) Plates of **entreaties** were served at the party. ____
(b) The student **entreated** the teacher to let her go to the bathroom. ____
(c) The visitors were **entreated** to a large meal. ____
(d) Jasmine got upset when her parents ignored her tearful **entreaties**. ____
8. (a) Faisal **impelled** in the smell of the bakery. ____
(b) What **impels** you to say the things you say? ____
(c) Air forced from the engine **impels** the jet forward at high speed. ____
(d) Keep studying until you feel you have **impelled** enough. ____
9. (a) A **profound** silence greeted us as we walked into the room. ____
(b) Einstein had many **profound** insights. ____
(c) The water in the pool is not **profound** enough for swimming. ____
(d) Elise has **profound** love for her parents. ____
10. (a) The weather turned **irascible**, so we decided to stay home. ____
(b) Elijah gets **irascible** if he is kept waiting ____
(c) Her **irascible** mood scared us too much to talk to her. ____
(d) This **irascible** math problem cannot be solved. ____

4B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *unhappy*?
 (a) dejected (b) profound (c) despondent (d) forlorn
2. Which word or words go with *endless*?
 (a) perpetual (b) temporary (c) interminable (d) abhorrent
3. Which word or words go with *alone*?
 (a) tirade (b) recluse (c) solitude (d) solitary
4. Which word or words go with *vibrate*?
 (a) accelerate (b) punctuate (c) reverberate (d) entreat
5. Which word or words go with *fearful*?
 (a) affable (b) apprehensive (c) tremulous (d) steadfast
6. Which word or words go with *strongly dislike*?
 (a) loathe (b) entreat (c) abhor (d) detest
7. Which word or words go with *friendly*?
 (a) despondent (b) amiable (c) tremulous (d) affable
8. Which word or words go with *beg*?
 (a) beseech (b) entreat (c) impel (d) implore
9. Which word or words go with *angry*?
 (a) abhorrent (b) irascible (c) exasperated (d) reclusive
10. Which word or words go with *wise*?
 (a) interminable (b) astute (c) sage (d) shrewd

| |
|--------------|
| abhor |
| affable |
| amiss |
| despondent |
| entreat |
| haunt |
| impel |
| interminable |
| irascible |
| profound |
| recluse |
| reverberate |
| sage |
| tirade |
| tremulous |

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. **Sage**

- (a) advice from my aunt put me on the right path.
- (b) grows year-round if the soil is right.
- (c) weather enabled us to be clad in shorts, T-shirts, and sandals.
- (d) words should not be ignored.

2. It was **amiss**

- (a) of me to forget your birthday.
- (b) for everyone that we stay home and do nothing.
- (c) to give me such a wonderful present on my birthday.
- (d) of the students to treat the teacher disrespectfully.

3. I was **despondent**

- (a) that my relatives helped me complete the extra work.
- (b) when I realized the game was rained out.
- (c) when I learned that my bus was canceled.
- (d) and glowing with happiness.

4. **Haunted**

- (a) by memories of when he fell on stage, Hamid never wanted to dance again.
- (b) castles can be very popular with tourists.
- (c) until it was almost extinct, the American bison is now making a comeback.
- (d) cows in India are protected by state laws.

5. The superhero was **impelled**

- (a) in over three hundred newspapers nationwide.
- (b) from crashing into the lake.
- (c) to fight evil whenever she could.
- (d) through the air by a secret force.

6. An **interminable**

- (a) argument seemed to have been going on for days.
- (b) flower died because it didn't have enough water.
- (c) rule let the uniformed students wear whatever they wanted on Fridays.
- (d) silence followed the announcement, as no one present had a word to say.

7. A **profound**

- (a) creature rose from the water and opened its jaws.
- (b) person has intense and deeply felt thoughts.
- (c) loyalty to one's country might cause someone to join the military.
- (d) pothole in the road almost broke the car's rear axle.

8. **Reclusive**

- (a) people tend to live alone.
- (b) families love getting together with others.
- (c) billionaires avoid publicity, preferring to remain anonymous.
- (d) writing has many loops and flourishes.



Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. A place my voice would **reverberate** is

_____ .

2. If I met the president of the United States, I would **entreat** him or her to

_____ .

3. One example of **sage** advice might be:

_____ .

4. In stories, a **haunted** house often has

_____ .

5. One thing I **abhor** about the world is

_____ .

6. If something is **amiss**, that means it is

_____ .

7. Something I could **impel** through the air is

_____ .

8. I quickly get **irascible** when

_____ .

9. **Affability** is a good quality because

_____ .

10. A **tirade** is

_____ .

| |
|--------------|
| abhor |
| affable |
| amiss |
| despondent |
| entreat |
| haunt |
| impel |
| interminable |
| irascible |
| profound |
| recluse |
| reverberate |
| sage |
| tirade |
| tremulous |



The Tiger's Whisker

This folk tale from Korea tells us how love can heal deep wounds, not quickly or easily, but with patience and courage.

Once Kim Soo-Nyung's life was filled with happiness. She and her husband, Liang-Po, one of the most **affable** of men, cultivated the fields of their small farm and raised three children with never an angry word spoken between them. But when war broke out, Liang-Po was forced to serve in the army even though he **abhorred** violence.

While he was away, Soo-Nyung and her three children worked hard to ensure the success of the farm. They took satisfaction in planting and harvesting, caring for the livestock, and keeping the farm buildings in good repair, all without outside help. The war, though, dragged on **interminably**; there were times when Soo-Nyung grew **despondent**, thinking she would never see Liang-Po again. But one day in the early spring, as she was drawing water from the well, she looked up to see him limping along the road toward the farm. Scarcely able to believe her eyes, Soo-Nyung rushed to greet him and welcome him home.

Her joy was short-lived, however, for it did not take long to see that something was **amiss**. There had been a **profound** change in Liang-Po. He, who always had been ready for a joke or a romp with his children, was now **irascible** and snapped at them without cause. He shut himself away like a **recluse**, responding to Soo-Nyung's pleas that he join her and the children for the evening meal with a stony silence. If she persisted, he would launch into a **tirade** that caused her to flee his presence. He took no interest in the farm, no pleasure in his family, and refused to talk about what troubled him. In time, Soo-Nyung, having lost patience with her husband, had no more dealings with him.

Liang-Po's mother, who lived in the next village, was distressed by her daughter-in-law's unhappiness. She persuaded Soo-Nyung to visit a local herbalist, a woman who was famous as much for her **sage** advice as for her herbal remedies. Soo-Nyung's sad story touched this woman's heart. "Your husband undoubtedly witnessed terrible scenes while in the army, for that is the nature of war," she told Soo-Nyung. "He is **haunted** by those memories.

Fortunately there is a cure, but it requires a whisker plucked from a wild tiger. When you bring it to me, you shall have the remedy your husband needs.”

In a **tremulous** voice, Soo-Nyung thanked the herbalist. The thought of facing a wild tiger filled her with dread, but she loved her husband, and this **impelled** her to follow the herbalist’s instructions. She made her way to the tiger’s lair, where she was greeted with a terrifying roar that **reverberated** through the forest. She fled in a panic, convinced that the wild beast was about to tear her limb from limb. Still, she found the courage to return the next day, this time with a piece of red meat. After smelling it suspiciously, the tiger devoured the meat.

Day after day, Soo-Nyung returned with more meat until the tiger grew so accustomed to her that she was finally able to rub its head and tickle its throat without being afraid. At last there came a day when she found the courage to reach out and pluck one of its whiskers. The tiger drew back and growled, but it did not attack her. Triumphantly, Soo-Nyung returned to the herbalist with the tiger’s whisker, **entreating** her to prepare the remedy she needed.

The wise herbalist replied that Soo-Nyung had already found the cure. “If you can win the trust of a savage tiger,” she said, “surely you can find the patience to regain the affection of your husband, whose heart has been hardened by war.”

Soo-Nyung thanked the herbalist for teaching her a valuable lesson. In time her patience was rewarded when Liang-Po was restored to his former self.

| |
|--------------|
| abhor |
| affable |
| amiss |
| despondent |
| entreat |
| haunt |
| impel |
| interminable |
| irascible |
| profound |
| recluse |
| reverberate |
| sage |
| tirade |
| tremulous |

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. How do we know that the war kept Liang-Po from his family for a long time?

2. Why would it be inaccurate to describe Liang-Po as **irascible** at the end of the story?

3. Why did Liang-Po's mother want to help?

4. What kind of reputation did the woman have that Soo-Nyung went to for help?

5. What is the meaning of **amiss** as it is used in the passage?

6. On what occasions did Liang-Po break his silence following his return?

7. Why would Liang-Po's **reclusive** behavior be very hard for the family to deal with?

8. How do we know that Liang-Po probably got along with his neighbors before the war?

9. What was the outcome of Soo-Nyung's **entreaty** to the herbalist for help?

10. Why was it likely that the tiger's roar startled other animals?

11. Why might Liang-Po have had trouble sleeping after his return?

12. How do we know that farm work was not **abhorrent** to Soo-Nyung?

13. Who **impelled** Soo-Nyung to visit the herbalist?

14. What does Liang-Po's snapping at his children tell you of his disposition after the war?

15. What is the meaning of **tremulous** as it is used in the passage?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

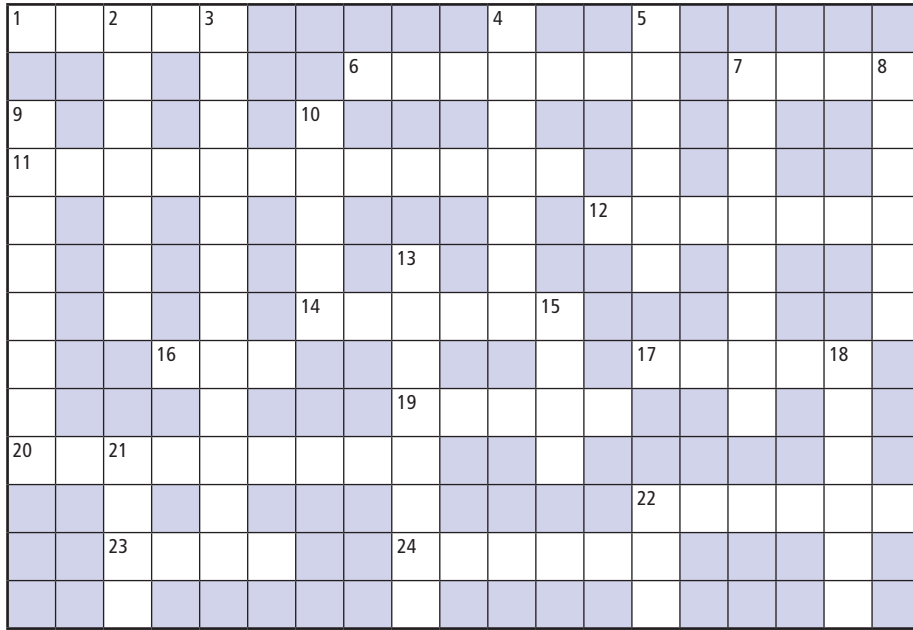
-
- The Latin word *ira*, meaning "anger," forms the root of several English words having related meanings. *Ire* is a synonym for *anger*. (In a carefully worded letter to the editor, James expressed his *ire* over the plans to build a mall in the center of town.)

Irate and **irascible** are synonyms for *angry*. *Irate* suggests a single instance of becoming angry. (Karen became *irate* when she saw that someone had left the gate open to the horse pasture.) *Irascible* suggests a continuing inability to control one's anger.

| |
|--------------|
| abhor |
| affable |
| amiss |
| despondent |
| entreat |
| haunt |
| impel |
| interminable |
| irascible |
| profound |
| recluse |
| reverberate |
| sage |
| tirade |
| tremulous |

Review

Crossword Puzzle Solve the crossword puzzle by studying the clues and filling in the answer boxes. The number after a clue is the lesson the word is from.



Clues Across

1. Cunning; deceit (3)
6. A facial expression of pain or disgust (2)
7. Eager (1)
11. Seeming to go on forever (4)
12. Friendly (4)
14. A passage under land or water
16. A young boy
17. To call forth (1)
19. To happen again (3)
20. To free from a difficult situation (3)
22. To receive from a source (2)
23. Having wisdom (4)
24. A long, angry speech (4)

Clues Down

2. To introduce gradually (3)
3. Extremely painful (1)
4. To try to equal (1)
5. An abrupt setback (1)
7. A wearing away by friction (2)
8. To lower in self-esteem (1)
9. To pretend (2)
10. Something on which a thing turns (3)
13. An earnest request (4)
15. Opposite of *quiet*
18. Nine, ten, _____
21. Another word for *exam*
22. A home for a lion

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

audacious

ô dā' shəs

adj. 1. Willing to take risks; daring.

The students came up with an **audacious** plan to build a neighborhood park where there was currently a garbage dump.

2. Showing disrespect or a lack of courtesy.

Our teacher warned us that the **audacious** remarks were not appropriate in a civil debate.

audacity *n.* (ô das' ə tē) Willingness to take risks by showing excessive boldness.

Olly was the only boy with the **audacity** to ask for more food.



.....
Talk to your partner about situations that require audacity.

confiscate

kän' fi skät

v. To seize, by force if necessary; to take possession of.

Ms. Martinez **confiscated** my phone and told me I could have it back when class was over.

conscientious

kän shē en' shəs

adj. 1. Thorough; careful.

Because of our **conscientious** preparations, the science fair was enjoyable and informative for everyone.

2. Honest; principled.

Several of the students made a **conscientious** effort to combat hunger by working with the food bank.



.....
Discuss with your partner what a conscientious person would do if he or she found a wallet on the sidewalk.

depict

dē pikt'

v. To give a picture of; to describe.

These seafaring novels **depict** life aboard a navy sailing ship with great accuracy.



.....
Tell your partner how you would depict your school to someone who has never been there.

embark

em bärk'

v. 1. To go on board a ship or airplane at the start of a voyage.

Around nine o'clock, we **embarked** for a day of whale watching.

2. To start out; to begin.

Lewis and Clark **embarked** on their famous expedition across America in 1804.

inkling

ink' liŋ

n. A slight suspicion; a vague idea.

As she opened the door, Shala had no **inkling** that her friends were hidden in the darkened room, waiting to shout, "Surprise!"

lackadaisical
lak ə dā' zi kəl

adj. Showing little spirit or enthusiasm.
When the students came after school to work on their reports, the librarian was quite **lackadaisical** about enforcing the no-talking rule.

mutiny
myōōt' n ē

n. Deliberate refusal to obey orders given by those in command, especially by sailors.
The 1917 **mutiny** by French soldiers could have caused France to lose the war.
v. To rebel openly against a commander.
We think the students might **mutiny** if the cafeteria does not start serving better food.



.....
Chat with your partner about whether it is better to mutiny or to try to reach a peaceful compromise when faced with unreasonable rules.

pilfer
pil' fər

v. To steal repeatedly small amounts or things that are of little value.
Pip **pilfered** bread and other bits of food from the kitchen to feed the injured mouse he was caring for.

profusion
prō fyōō' zhən

n. A plentiful supply; a great or generous amount.
Daffodils grew in **profusion** along the river bank.
profuse *adj.* Given or occurring in generous amounts; abundant.
Jerry's **profuse** apologies convinced me he was sorry he had hurt my feelings.



.....
Share with your partner something you can eat profuse amounts of.

prudent
prōōd' nt

adj. Very careful; showing judgment and wisdom.
Lost in the forest, Aadhya argued it was more **prudent** to wait until morning to find the trail than to continue wandering in the dark.
prudence *n.* The avoidance of risk; carefulness in what one says or does.
Although the knight was shaking with anger, he exercised **prudence**, saying nothing to the king who had insulted him.

rankle
ranj' kəl

v. To cause continuing anger or irritation.
The unfair criticism still **rankled** Deena, even though her friend later apologized.

rebuke
rē byōōk'

v. To criticize strongly; to reprimand.
Mrs. Meyer **rebuked** Ben for his insulting remark in class.
n. A sharp criticism.
My mom's **rebuke** seemed to include every mistake I had made since I was born.



.....
Talk to your partner about positive ways you might respond to a rebuke.

serene
sə rēn'

adj. Calm and untroubled; peaceful.
The nurse's **serene** manner comforted the patients.

serenity *n.* (sə ren' ə tē) A calm and untroubled state.
My grandmother's constant **serenity** has a calming effect during times of crisis.



.....
Discuss with your partner ways you can find serenity in daily life.

slovenly
slāv'ən lē

adj. Untidy; carelessly done.
My mother would not let me leave for the field trip until I cleaned my **slovenly** bedroom.

5A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 5. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) one that is peaceful. (c) A lackadaisical manner is
(b) one that changes frequently. (d) A serene manner is

2. (a) To rankle someone is to (c) warn that person.
(b) To rebuke someone is to (d) criticize that person.

3. (a) a feeling of mistrust. (c) Audacity is
(b) Prudence is (d) excessive boldness.

4. (a) to describe it. (c) To confiscate something is
(b) to remember it. (d) To depict something is

5. (a) imitate another's actions. (c) To embark is to
 (b) set out on a voyage. (d) To mutiny is to
-

6. (a) avoids unnecessary risks. (c) A slovenly plan is one that
 (b) A prudent plan is one that (d) has several parts.
-

7. (a) To pilfer something is to (c) take it by force.
 (b) To confiscate something is to (d) exchange it for something else.
-

8. (a) A conscientious person is (c) defies authority.
 one who
 (b) A lackadaisical person is one who (d) does careful work.
-

9. (a) to rebel against authority. (c) to make a sincere effort.
 (b) To mutiny is (d) To pilfer is
-

10. (a) they are numerous. (c) If the illustrations are profuse,
 (b) If the illustrations are slovenly, (d) they are elegant.
-

| |
|---------------|
| audacious |
| confiscate |
| conscientious |
| depict |
| embark |
| inkling |
| lackadaisical |
| mutiny |
| pilfer |
| profusion |
| prudent |
| rankle |
| rebuke |
| serene |
| slovenly |

5B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. Spencer's parents wished he were not so **willing to take risks** as they watched him climb the rocks.
2. My sister is always accusing me of being very **untidy and careless** in my personal habits.
3. Poison ivy grows in **very large amounts** at the southern end of the island.
4. When in the ocean, surfers are expected to act with **care to avoid anything that might be too risky**.
5. **An act of defiance against one's superior** is a serious action.
6. Unlike many early colonists, Roger Williams, acting in a **principled and honest** manner, paid the Narragansetts for the land he wanted to occupy.
7. The woman had the first **faint suggestion** she had won the election when reporters arrived.
8. I hope you are not a person for whom an imagined slight **continues to irritate** just as much as a real one.
9. The group's dancing was so **lacking in enthusiasm** that they looked bored.
10. Before mountaineers can **start out** on an expedition, they need supplies.

5c

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which of the following indicates a **slovenly** person?
 - polished shoes
 - long hair
 - dirty fingernails
 - patched jeans
- Which of the following might deserve a **rebuke**?
 - breaking a rule
 - showing negligence
 - saving a child's life
 - getting an A on a test
- Which of the following might **rankle**?
 - a deliberate insult
 - a false accusation
 - an unexpected rebuff
 - an affable remark
- Which of the following could be **confiscated**?
 - a warm smile
 - a sum of money
 - a helpful attitude
 - a firm promise
- Which of the following might a **lackadaisical** student do?
 - ask for extra homework
 - get straight A's
 - pay close attention
 - daydream in class
- Which of the following would a **conscientious** bike rider do?
 - signal before making a turn
 - stay alert
 - wear a helmet
 - ignore stop signs
- Which of the following suggests **serenity**?
 - a basketball game
 - a sunset
 - a sleeping baby
 - a carnival ride
- Which of the following can a person **pilfer**?
 - a diamond ring
 - a car
 - a candy bar
 - a sneeze

| |
|---------------|
| audacious |
| confiscate |
| conscientious |
| depict |
| embark |
| inkling |
| lackadaisical |
| mutiny |
| pilfer |
| profusion |
| prudent |
| rankle |
| rebuke |
| serene |
| slovenly |

Word Study: Word Parts

Complete each sentence. Each answer is a word from this or an earlier lesson.

1. The prefix *re-* means “back.” It combines with the Latin verb *salire* (to leap) to form the English word _____ (able to spring back).
2. The prefix *re-* also means “again.” It combines with the Latin verb *currere* (to run) to form the English word _____ (to happen again).
3. The prefix *de-* means “remove.” It combines with the Greek word *hydr* (water) to form the English word _____ (to remove water from).
4. The prefix *an-* means “without.” It combines with the Greek word *onuma* (name) to form the English word _____ (of an unknown name).
5. The Greek word *pseudes* means “false.” Combined with the Greek word for “name,” it forms the English word _____ (a fictitious or pen name).
6. Two Greek words, *anthos*, meaning “flower,” and *legein*, meaning “to gather,” combine to form the English word _____ (a collection of various writings).
7. The prefix *in-* means “in” or “into.” It changes to *im-* when it combines with the Latin verb *pellare* (to drive) to form the English word _____ (to drive forward).



The *Bounty*, Part One

When the captain of His Majesty's ship *Bounty* spoke to the men on watch a little after midnight, everything seemed normal. Three weeks before, on April 4, 1789, Captain Bligh and his crew had **embarked** for the West Indies from the tropical South Pacific island of Tahiti. For six months, they had collected breadfruit plants, which grew in **profusion** on Tahiti. The purpose of the voyage was to transport over a thousand of these plants, already carefully stowed on board, to the West Indies. They were to be grown as a food crop on the large plantations there.

Captain Bligh probably should have realized that not all was as **serene** as it seemed. He knew that his men had been loath to leave the pleasant island life to return to the more rigid structure of life aboard ship. He had, in fact, been dissatisfied with the **slovenly** habits they had developed while the *Bounty* had lain at anchor. Some of the crew failed to care properly for the sails. Others had **pilfered** from the ship because no one was keeping proper watches.

Furthermore, Captain Bligh seemed to have lost confidence in his chief mate, Fletcher Christian. It had been Christian's **lackadaisical** attitude, Bligh believed, that had resulted in the sailors' neglecting their duties on Tahiti. Bligh had **rebuked** Christian for failing to supervise the men properly. If this had **rankled** the chief mate, Bligh had not perceived any change in him when the two had dined together.

Despite these annoyances, Bligh's mood was calm when he returned to his cabin. He had no **inkling** of what was about to happen as, rocked by the gentle motion of the ship, he fell asleep. Had he been **prudent**, he might have posted a guard outside his cabin. As it was, its door was not even locked. Shortly before dawn, the captain was awakened abruptly. Fletcher Christian, accompanied by several crew members, burst in and informed him that they had taken over the ship. They had **confiscated** all the weapons on board. They had also locked up the eighteen crew members who remained loyal to the captain.

Bligh warned those who held him prisoner that for this **audacious** act they would all be hanged. His warning, however, had no effect. Later that morning, he and the loyal crew members were pushed into an open boat. They were permitted to take some weapons with them and were given a small quantity of

| |
|---------------|
| audacious |
| confiscate |
| conscientious |
| depict |
| embark |
| inkling |
| lackadaisical |
| mutiny |
| pilfer |
| profusion |
| prudent |
| rankle |
| rebuke |
| serene |
| slovenly |

food and water. Bligh watched helplessly as Christian and the remaining crew members on board sailed off in the *Bounty*. He and the other passengers were left in the tiny boat to their fate in the middle of the vast ocean.

Three movies have been made of the **mutiny** that took place on the *Bounty* on the morning of April 28, 1789. All three **depict** Captain Bligh as a cruel man who treated his crew badly and was himself responsible for what happened. However, by using information in court documents, letters, and diaries written by people who participated in the events, several historians argue that Bligh was a **conscientious** naval officer. He was no stricter than other sea captains of the time. While he had ordered several men flogged twelve or even twenty-four lashes for being disobedient, this was the usual punishment at that time in the British navy for quite minor offenses. To this day, there is no unanimous explanation for this event that changed the lives of these men forever.

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. Why do you think there was such a serious punishment for **mutiny**?

2. Why would it be inaccurate to describe Fletcher Christian as a **conscientious** first mate?

3. What are two examples from the passage that illustrate the crew's **slovenly** performance?

4. Why was Christian **rebuked** for his supervision of the men on Tahiti?

5. What is the meaning of **embarked** as it is used in the passage?

6. What kinds of things do you think the men could have **pilfered** from the ship?

7. Why was Tahiti a good place to gather breadfruit plants?

8. What was it about Christian that made Bligh lose confidence in him?

9. Why would it be inaccurate to say that the men who took over the ship were acting in a **prudent** manner?

10. Was Bligh **rankled** by his men's behavior as he went to sleep on April 27, 1789? Explain.

11. Why is it likely that Captain Bligh did not feel **serene** as he watched the *Bounty* sail away?

12. How did Fletcher Christian make sure that none of the crew would resist his takeover?

13. How do we know that no one warned the captain of possible trouble?

14. What is the meaning of **audacious** as it is used in the passage?

| |
|---------------|
| audacious |
| confiscate |
| conscientious |
| depict |
| embark |
| inkling |
| lackadaisical |
| mutiny |
| pilfer |
| profusion |
| prudent |
| rankle |
| rebuke |
| serene |
| slovenly |

15. Why do you think Captain Bligh is **depicted** as cruel in the movies about this event?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- The word **lackadaisical** has an interesting history. In the eighteenth century, a person might have expressed regret for a failure to act properly by saying, "Alack the day." Translated into modern English, it means, "I'm sorry that day happened." The expression shortened to "lackaday," and a person who used it frequently was described as *lackadaisical*.

Lax is a separate word, meaning "not strict or demanding." (Accidents occurred because of the *lax*

safety rules at the plant.) Don't substitute *laxadaisical*, which is not in any dictionary, for *lackadaisical*.

.....

- In early Roman times, tax collectors working for the state put the money they collected in baskets woven from rushes. The Latin name for this basket was *fiscus*. *Fiscal*, which means "having to do with money collected and spent by the state," is formed from *fiscus*. So is the word **confiscate**. The state has the power to seize, by force if necessary, money owed to it by its citizens.

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

anarchy

an' ə r kē

n. 1. Total absence of government.

Government officials fled, leaving the country in a state of **anarchy**.

2. Lack of order; total confusion.

After the Iraq War ended in 2011, the country was in a state of **anarchy** with no established law enforcement in place.



.....
Talk to your partner about problems that might lead to anarchy in the classroom.

apprehend

ap rē hend'

v. 1. To seize; to arrest.

John Brown was **apprehended** when he tried to confiscate weapons at Harper's Ferry, Virginia, in 1859.

2. To grasp the meaning of; to understand.

When Celia talked about her lost dreams of being a dancer, we immediately **apprehended** how upset she was.



.....
Discuss with your partner how you can help each other apprehend new vocabulary words.

arraign

ə rān'

v. To bring before a court to face charges.

The man who vandalized the artwork has been **arraigned** and will soon go to trial for his actions.

assimilate

ə sim' ə lāt

v. 1. To absorb into a population.

By the second generation, the immigrants had been **assimilated** into Canadian society.

2. To take in a part and absorb into the whole.

The students **assimilated** the new information, then began to apply it.



.....
Share with your partner the way you are most able to assimilate information, for example by listening or by reading.

bizarre

bi zār'

adj. Strikingly out of the ordinary; peculiar.

The terrifying clown mask, resting in a bed of violets near the side of the road, created a **bizarre** image.

calamity
kə lam' ə tē

n. An event that causes great suffering and harm; a disaster.
The train engineer averted a **calamity** by slamming on the brakes as soon as she saw the car stalled on the tracks.

calamitous *adj.* Disastrous.
Filling in these wetlands to build a mall has been **calamitous** for the songbirds that migrated here each year.



.....
Tell your partner what calamitous event, such as a tornado or earthquake, you would be most afraid of and why.

conspire
kən spīr'

v. 1. To plan together secretly to do something wrong or illegal.
The high school students had **conspired** to cut school, but their parents learned of their plan.

2. To join or act together.
The beautiful weather, good friends, and delicious food **conspired** to make the weekend at the beach one I will always remember.

conspiracy *n.* (kən spīr' ə sē) A joining with others to plan or carry out unlawful acts.
The **conspiracy** of the German officers to kill Hitler failed on July 20, 1944.

dissension
di sen' shən

n. A difference of opinion; disagreement.
Because there was so much **dissension** at the student council meeting about the plans for the school dance, there is still no date or theme chosen.



.....
Chat with your partner about how to handle dissension during a group project.

elapse
ē laps'

v. To pass or slip by (used with time).
Five years **elapsed** before they saw their cousins again.

imminent
im' ə nənt

adj. About to happen; likely to occur in the very near future.
The clouds rolling in made rain seem **imminent**.

interrogate
in ter' ə gāt

v. To ask questions of, especially in a thorough or formal manner.
The assistant principal will **interrogate** the students involved in the fight to learn what might have caused it.

interrogation *n.* The act of questioning.
"This feels like an **interrogation!**" Ezekiel said to his parents when they questioned him about where he had been all evening.



.....
Share with your partner a time when you interrogated your friends to find out what they really thought about something.

lionize
lī' ə nīz

v. To treat as a celebrity.
After he won the national chess championship, Kwame was **lionized** by his classmates.

meticulous
mə tik' yə ləs

adj. Extremely careful; attentive to small details.

All the parachutists gave their gear a **meticulous** final check before leaping from the plane.

shackle
shak' əl

n. 1. A ring or band put around the arm or leg to prevent free movement.

The pirates' captives were crammed into ships where they sat in **shackles** for the duration of the voyage.

2. Something that prevents free action.

Kevin hoped he could throw off the **shackles** of poor study habits when he left for college.

v. To prevent freedom of action.

High school dropouts often find that their lack of education **shackles** them to low-paying jobs.



.....
Discuss with your partner how the expectations of your family might shackle you.

swelter
swel' tər

v. To suffer from or to be overcome by great heat.

We **sweltered** in the hot sun because there was no shade in the field where we were playing soccer.

sweltering *adj.* Very hot and humid; uncomfortable because of extremely hot weather.

Going for a swim is the best way to cool down on a **sweltering** July day.

6A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in bold is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

- (a) The day after Labor Day **apprehended** the start of school. ____

(b) To **apprehend** the meaning of the book, I talked about it with my teacher. ____

(c) The burglar was **apprehended** and taken to jail. ____

(d) We walked outside but were **apprehended** by bitter cold. ____
- (a) To get the vitamin D we need, we **assimilate** it through the skin from the sun. ____

(b) One species of penguins **assimilated** into another species. ____

(c) I **assimilated** my arms and stretched before I stood up. ____

(d) I was able to **assimilate** what the teacher was saying even though I was exhausted. ____

3. (a) The **shackles** of poverty are being broken, but not fast enough. ____
 (b) A few **shackles** were blown off the roof in last night's storm. ____
 (c) Marie is **shackled** by the belief that she isn't smart enough. ____
 (d) The elephants are put in **shackles** when the veterinarian examines them. ____
4. (a) I felt **meticulous** when I realized no one was listening to me. ____
 (b) A **meticulous** search of the house revealed that nothing was missing. ____
 (c) Manuel keeps a **meticulous** record of which songs he has downloaded. ____
 (d) **Meticulous** wildfires near Yuma have consumed over a thousand acres. ____
5. (a) The bus driver averted a **calamity** by pulling to the side of the road during the blizzard. ____
 (b) Paulo wrote a **calamity** of everything that had happened. ____
 (c) Lead in the drinking water has a **calamitous** effect on children's health. ____
 (d) If the flooding continues, the consequences will be **calamitous**. ____
6. (a) Fearful of **anarchy** among the students, the principal held a meeting to ask their opinions. ____
 (b) Suffering heavy casualties, the soldiers began to **anarchy**. ____
 (c) My grandparents fled their home country years ago to avoid **anarchy**. ____
 (d) **Anarchy** is spread by a rare species of mosquito. ____
7. (a) Let's **conspire** to play a fun prank on the class. ____
 (b) My sister and I **conspired** to bake a beautiful cake for my dad's birthday. ____
 (c) The members of the **conspiracy** met in secret to plan their next move. ____
 (d) Exercise makes me **conspire**, so I carry a towel with me. ____
8. (a) The building suddenly **elapsed** in front of their eyes. ____
 (b) Carlos **elapsed** into Spanish whenever his English failed him. ____
 (c) A whole year **elapsed** before it snowed again. ____
 (d) Six decades had **elapsed**, and the queen still sat on the throne. ____
9. (a) There was no **dissension**, so the vote was unanimous. ____
 (b) **Dissension** among the people troubled the leader. ____
 (c) **Dissension** is caused by too much sun. ____
 (d) The three **dissensions** are red, blue, and yellow. ____
10. (a) The last day of school next week is **imminent**. ____
 (b) The most **imminent** feature of New York is the Empire State Building. ____
 (c) With a winter freeze **imminent**, it was time for the geese to fly south. ____
 (d) Only the most **imminent** guests were seated first. ____

| |
|-------------|
| anarchy |
| apprehend |
| arraign |
| assimilate |
| bizarre |
| calamity |
| conspire |
| dissension |
| elapse |
| imminent |
| interrogate |
| lionize |
| meticulous |
| shackle |
| swelter |

6B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which word or words go with *the law*?
(a) verdict (b) court (c) arraign (d) calamity
- Which word or words go with *peculiar*?
(a) tedious (b) meticulous (c) imminent (d) bizarre
- Which word or words go with *near future*?
(a) imminent (b) perpetual (c) calamitous (d) duration
- Which word or words go with *question*?
(a) loath (b) assimilate (c) confiscate (d) interrogate
- Which word or words go with *uncomfortable*?
(a) clammy (b) humid (c) sweltering (d) meticulous
- Which word or words go with *understand*?
(a) fathom (b) conspire (c) apprehend (d) lionize
- Which word or words go with *misfortune*?
(a) entreaty (b) calamity (c) disaster (d) catastrophe
- Which word or words go with *secret plan*?
(a) dissension (b) badger (c) interrogation (d) conspiracy
- Which word or words go with *praise*?
(a) hail (b) acclaim (c) arraign (d) lionize
- Which word or words go with *careful*?
(a) scrupulous (b) imminent (c) meticulous (d) conscientious

6C

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. **Anarchy**

- (a) reigned when the king was overthrown.
- (b) is the study of politics and government.
- (c) needs medical attention right away.
- (d) occurs when the government loses control.

2. To be **arraigned**

- (a) is to be attired in the finest garments.
- (b) of cheating just because I got a perfect score on the test is unfair.
- (c) is not the same thing as being convicted.
- (d) on charges is a very serious matter.

3. **Bizarre**

- (a) names like the Sisterhood of Flying Pigs were proposed for the club.
- (b) suggestions that the Earth and Moon would soon collide were common a century ago.
- (c) scenes of being abducted by aliens comprised most of Leo's dreams.
- (d) sheets of paper had been deliberately left blank.

4. A year **elapsed**

- (a) into a series of moments that I can never forget.
- (b) with no word from my oldest cousin as to her whereabouts.
- (c) before I was brave enough to swim in the ocean again.
- (d) before I saw Julio again.

5. The **imminent**

- (a) birth of the new prince was all over the news.
- (b) return of the eagles had birdwatchers very excited.
- (c) feature of Rio de Janeiro is Sugarloaf Mountain.
- (d) arrival of spring is signaled by the first daffodils.

6. The **interrogation**

- (a) of farmland has resulted in profuse crops the last four years.
- (b) of golf courses during the drought has been banned.
- (c) revealed nothing the detectives did not already know.
- (d) of the witness is scheduled for tomorrow.

| |
|-------------|
| anarchy |
| apprehend |
| arraign |
| assimilate |
| bizarre |
| calamity |
| conspire |
| dissension |
| elapse |
| imminent |
| interrogate |
| lionize |
| meticulous |
| shackle |
| swelter |

7. To **lionize**

- (a) the quarterback makes us forget he is only human.
- (b) a person as a liar is unfair unless backed up by evidence.
- (c) a wild animal is abhorrent and should be banned.
- (d) those who have had a significant positive impact on the world is natural.

8. **Sweltering**

- (a) their way across ice would be hard work.
- (b) in the hot sun on our hike increased our risk of dehydration.
- (c) temperatures have persisted all summer.
- (d) people of their money is a crime.

6D

Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

- 1. If you are **shackled** by something, that means
_____ .
- 2. Doctors are often **lionized** because
_____ .
- 3. An **imminent** disaster in Alaska might be
_____ .
- 4. To **apprehend** what someone is saying, you need to
_____ .
- 5. If a group of people **assimilates**, that means
_____ .
- 6. The most **bizarre** thing I can imagine is
_____ .
- 7. It would be **calamitous** if
_____ .
- 8. **Dissension** occurs when
_____ .
- 9. It's important to be **meticulous** when
_____ .
- 10. The place where someone is **arraigned** is
_____ .

Read the passage.



The *Bounty*, Part Two

After Captain Bligh and the eighteen members of his crew who remained loyal to him were set adrift in an open boat, they understood clearly that the chance of their surviving to report the **calamity** was slim. Nevertheless, Bligh wasted no time in raising the sail and ordering the men to start rowing. He also began a journal, in which he **meticulously** recorded everything that happened.

The greatest hazard they faced was the weather. In stormy seas the overcrowded twenty-three-foot boat was tossed so mercilessly that drowning seemed **imminent**. One storm, which lasted two weeks, kept the men thoroughly soaked the entire time. On other days, the **sweltering** heat of the tropical sun left them too exhausted to row. They stayed alive by collecting rainwater and by stopping at tiny, uninhabited islands to gather fruit and oysters. In this way they added to the meager supply of food and water they had been given when they were set adrift.

At last, weak and barely alive, they reached Timor, north of Australia, where they were received by the Dutch governor of the island. Their ordeal had lasted forty-one days. Another ten weeks **elapsed** before Captain Bligh was well enough to leave for England. When he arrived there in March 1790, he was **lionized** by the public for his amazing feat of crossing almost four thousand miles of uncharted ocean in an open boat. Nevertheless, losing one's ship as the result of a mutiny was a serious matter that required investigation. Bligh defended his actions well before the court of inquiry, which was conducted by the navy. They ruled that he was not responsible for the loss of his ship.

The British government took a quite different view of the mutineers, however. Having learned that some of the former crew members of the *Bounty* were on Tahiti, the navy sent an armed ship, the *Pandora*, to bring them to justice. When the ship arrived in March 1791, the officers found that many of the mutineers had married Tahitian women and were beginning to **assimilate** into the life of the island. All the men were quickly **apprehended** and taken aboard the *Pandora*, where they were **interrogated** by the captain. They told him that Fletcher Christian, with eight crew members, had sailed away to an unknown destination after a brief stay on Tahiti.

| |
|-------------|
| anarchy |
| apprehend |
| arraign |
| assimilate |
| bizarre |
| calamity |
| conspire |
| dissension |
| elapse |
| imminent |
| interrogate |
| lionize |
| meticulous |
| shackle |
| swelter |

With the captured mutineers on board, the *Pandora* set sail for England. On the return voyage, however, four of the prisoners drowned when the ship sank in a storm. They had been kept **shackled** below decks, with the captain refusing to release them until the last moment before the ship went down. Of those remaining, six were **arraigned** when they eventually reached England. At the trial that followed, three were found guilty and hanged for **conspiring** to take over the *Bounty* by force. The others were set free.

And yet the story does not end there. In 1808, an American seal-hunting ship called the *Topaz* dropped anchor off what was believed to be an uninhabited island thirteen hundred miles southeast of Tahiti. A party sent ashore to explore discovered a man there named Alexander Smith. He had been one of the mutineers on the *Bounty*, and he had a **bizarre** tale to tell the American sailors.

Twenty years before, he said, Fletcher Christian had sailed to this speck of land, known today as Pitcairn Island, accompanied by eight of his fellow mutineers and eighteen Tahitians. After the *Bounty* had burned and sunk, the men and women began their new life on the island. But **dissension** soon developed when the sailors tried to force the Tahitians to become their servants. Quarrels led to violence and eventually to murder. The society they had established collapsed into **anarchy**. Within ten years of the *Bounty's* arrival at the island, Alexander Smith was the only one of the men left alive. Today, his descendants still live on Pitcairn Island.

► **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. Why wasn't Captain Bligh ever **arraigned**?

2. In what ways did the tropical sun create problems for the men in the open boat?

3. Why would the navy have wanted to **interrogate** Bligh once he had returned to England?

4. How do we know what happened to Bligh and his crew after they were set adrift?

5. How does the passage make clear that Bligh and his men did not believe their rescue was **imminent**?

6. Why do you think there was no **anarchy** on the overcrowded open boat?

7. Why might the sailors from the *Topaz* have doubted Alexander Smith's story?

8. Why do you think Christian left Tahiti in the *Bounty*?

9. Why was Captain Bligh **lionized** by the English public?

10. Describe the relations among the residents of Pitcairn island.

11. What **calamity** befell the *Pandora*?

12. How do you know the mutineers were trying to become **assimilated** into Tahitian society?

13. What restrictions did the prisoners on the *Pandora* experience?

| | |
|--|-------------|
| | anarchy |
| | apprehend |
| | arraign |
| | assimilate |
| | bizarre |
| | calamity |
| | conspire |
| | dissension |
| | elapse |
| | imminent |
| | interrogate |
| | lionize |
| | meticulous |
| | shackle |
| | swelter |

14. Following his return to Tahiti, how much time passed before Christian again sailed away?

15. What was the nature of the **conspiracy** for which three of the sailors were hanged?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- The Latin verb *prehendere* means “to grasp” or “to seize” and forms the root of the verb **apprehend**. Other words formed from this root include *comprehend*, “to understand; to grasp what is being explained” (You

seem unable to *comprehend* the seriousness of what you have done.); *prehensile*, “able to grip” (A monkey’s *prehensile* tail acts as a fifth limb.); *apprehensive*, “concerned” or “afraid” (An *apprehensive* person is gripped by a feeling of nervousness.).

Word List

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

claustrophobia

klôs trə fō´ bē ə

n. An abnormal fear of narrow, enclosed spaces.

Although Juanita is in the Navy, her **claustrophobia** prevents her from serving in submarines.

colleague

käl´ ēg

n. An associate or coworker of similar status.

On her birthday, Mom’s **colleagues** surprised her by taking her out to lunch.

condescend

kän də send´

v. 1. To lower oneself to a position one considers inferior.

Sarita said she would never **condescend** to respond to the jealous person who stole her new shoes.

2. To behave in an offensively superior manner.

During rehearsals, the star of the show never **condescended** to join the rest of the cast for lunch; instead he ate alone in his dressing room.

condescending *adj.* Showing an offensively superior manner.

Lucinda’s **condescending** attitude is not what we want in our elementary school tutors.



.....
Discuss with your partner why you think it is so frustrating to be spoken to in a condescending way.

contingent

kən tin´ jənt

adj. 1. Conditional; depending on something else.

Jackson’s plans for attending the university were **contingent** on receiving a scholarship.

2. Likely, but not certain to happen; possible.

If it rains, our **contingent** plan is to move the strawberry festival from the school lawn to the auditorium.

n. A group that is part of a larger one.

The Ethiopian **contingent** led the parade of Olympic athletes into the stadium.



.....
Talk to your partner about something you would like to do that is contingent on your parents’ approval.

daunt

dônt

v. To discourage or intimidate.

Learning that she needed medical treatment did not **daunt** Miranda but instead gave her hope for her future.

daunting *adj.* So difficult or dangerous as to discourage or intimidate.

The people who joined Lewis and Clark’s **daunting** quest were truly courageous.



.....
Tell your partner about the most daunting thing you have ever dreamed of doing.

deluge
del' yooj

n. 1. A downpour of rain; a flood.
Opening the dam just north of the Grand Canyon sent a **deluge** to the dry river beds in the canyon.

2. A flood of anything.
When the Moghadams advertised their new car for such a low price, they received a **deluge** of offers to buy.

v. To flood or overwhelm.
As she convalesced from her surgery, Delia's friends **deluged** her with cards, phone calls, and visits.



.....
Talk to your partner about which of your classes deluges you with the most homework.

dispel
di spel'

v. To clear away; to remove or get rid of, as if by scattering.
I wanted Tanis to reassure me, but her letter, instead of **dispelling** my fears, increased them.



.....
Share with your partner a way you have found to dispel your fears about something.

dub
dub

v. To give a title, nickname, or description to.
The pirate Edward Teach has been **dubbed** "Blackbeard."

fanfare
fan' far

n. 1. A sounding of trumpets or other brass instruments.
When the president strides into the auditorium, he is greeted with loud **fanfare**.
2. Any showy display.
The props manager, working behind the scenes without **fanfare**, was essential to the overall effect of the play.

fledgling
flej' ling

n. 1. A young bird just learning to fly.
The **fledglings** took short trial flights over the yard from their nest on the porch.

2. A young and inexperienced person.
The reporter, a **fledgling**, forgot to get the eyewitness's name.

adj. New and untested.
My **fledgling** website has been very busy this month.



.....
Discuss with your partner some things you could do to help a fledgling teacher.

inane
in an'

adj. Empty; shallow or silly.
Susan, bored by the **inane** chatter of her classmates, went back to reading her book.

inanity *n.* (in an' ə tē) Foolishness; a silly or pointless act.
Hearing the **inanity** of his own response made Bruno understand how exhausted and in need of sleep he really was.

mettle
met' l

n. Courage to bear up under difficult circumstances; spirit.
In spite of the bully's threats, the children showed their **mettle** by refusing to say anything about their friend.

negligible
neg' li jə bəl

adj. Small and unimportant, not worth noticing.
The team's mistakes in the final tournament were **negligible**, having no effect on the result.



.....
Talk to your partner about some negligible things you did this morning before school.

protract
prō trakt'

v. To draw out or lengthen (in time).
Our trip was **protracted** unnecessarily because my dad drove right past the correct exit.

replica
rep' li kə

n. A copy or reproduction, especially one on a smaller scale than the original.
A **replica** of the Statue of Liberty stood on my grandmother's shelf, a reminder of her first glimpse of her new country.

7A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 7. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) A contingent is
(b) A colleague is
(c) a coworker with equal status.
(d) an inexperienced person.

2. (a) fear of enclosed spaces.
(b) Mettle is
(c) a breakdown of the social order.
(d) Claustrophobia is

3. (a) a flood of it.
(b) A replica of something is
(c) A deluge of something is
(d) a showy display of it.

4. (a) a part of a larger group. (c) a fixed period of time.
 (b) A fanfare is (d) A contingent is
-

5. (a) A condescending actor (c) is one who outshines all others.
 (b) A fledgling actor (d) is one who treats others as inferior.
-

6. (a) a lack of spirit. (c) A fanfare is
 (b) An inanity is (d) a flourish of trumpets.
-

7. (a) fail to take proper care. (c) be afraid or intimidated.
 (b) To be daunted is to (d) To be negligible is to
-

8. (a) a young bird. (c) A replica is
 (b) A fledgling is (d) a feather worn as decoration.
-

9. (a) one that offers encouragement. (c) A negligible remark is
 (b) one that is foolish. (d) An inane remark is
-

10. (a) If an argument is protracted, (c) If an argument is dispelled,
 (b) it becomes more heated. (d) it is drawn out over time.
-

| |
|----------------|
| claustrophobia |
| colleague |
| condescend |
| contingent |
| daunt |
| deluge |
| dispel |
| dub |
| fanfare |
| fledgling |
| inane |
| mettle |
| negligible |
| protract |
| replica |

7B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. Your grade will be **dependent to some extent** on how many hours you study.
2. A **somewhat smaller copy** of Philadelphia's Liberty Bell hangs in our town museum.
3. **Young and inexperienced** boxers need close supervision at first so that they do not hurt each other.
4. The cost of the pack of gum was **small enough that we thought nothing of it**.
5. With very little **display intended to gain attention**, the owner announced that he would continue to pay his workers while the burned factory building was repaired.
6. When the cowboys got caught in a blizzard with the herd of horses they were driving over the mountain, they had plenty of opportunities to show their **ability to bear up under difficult circumstances**.
7. The sudden **downpour of rain** caused the crowd at the racetrack to run for shelter.
8. On summer mornings, the ocean breeze soon **gets rid of** the morning mist.
9. My little cousin was **given the nickname** Mouse because she was so quiet.
10. The way to deal with the **silly foolishness** of daytime talk shows is to turn off the television.

7C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Of which of the following could a **replica** be made?
 - a rebuff
 - the *Bounty*
 - an ancient coin
 - a dinosaur bone
- Which of the following could be called a **fledgling**?
 - a chick that is about to hatch
 - an inexperienced waiter
 - a robin testing its wings
 - a two-star general
- Which of the following can be **condescending**?
 - a remark
 - an attitude
 - a person
 - an elevator
- With which of the following can one be **deluged**?
 - offers
 - mail
 - orders
 - water
- Which of the following would have **colleagues**?
 - a doctor
 - a lawyer
 - a recluse
 - a college professor
- Which of the following might a person suffering from **claustrophobia** avoid?
 - open spaces
 - heights
 - elevators
 - narrow tunnels
- Which of the following could be **negligible**?
 - an amount of time lost
 - a careless driver
 - a sum of money
 - an amount of damage
- Which of the following can be **dispelled**?
 - fear
 - suspicion
 - doubts
 - fog

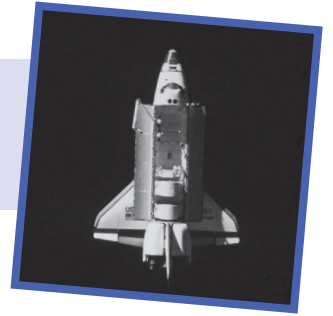
| |
|----------------|
| claustrophobia |
| colleague |
| condescend |
| contingent |
| daunt |
| deluge |
| dispel |
| dub |
| fanfare |
| fledgling |
| inane |
| mettle |
| negligible |
| protract |
| replica |

7D

Word Study: Synonyms and Antonyms

Each group of four words contains either two synonyms or two antonyms. Circle that pair. Then circle the S if they are synonyms or the A if they are antonyms.

| | | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|-----------|---|---|
| 1. annoy | name | deluge | dub | S | A |
| 2. fanfare | courage | welcome | mettle | S | A |
| 3. rankle | shorten | protract | deluge | S | A |
| 4. condescend | frighten | daunt | lengthen | S | A |
| 5. contingent | expert | colleague | fledgling | S | A |
| 6. conspire | dispel | condescend | evoke | S | A |
| 7. foolish | inane | negligible | cursory | S | A |
| 8. deluge | copy | address | replica | S | A |
| 9. negligible | meticulous | substantial | gruesome | S | A |
| 10. proprietor | associate | colleague | expert | S | A |



Women in Space, Part One

In 1959, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) introduced the first seven United States astronauts to the public. The announcement was made with great **fanfare**; it brought instant acclaim to the seven. All had previously been test pilots, and all were male.

Less than two decades later, things had changed tremendously. In 1978, another new **contingent** of aspiring astronauts arrived for training at the Johnson Space Center in Houston. On this occasion they included scientists, engineers, and medical doctors. In addition, six of the thirty-five **fledgling** astronauts were women.

At first, a **condescending** attitude toward women in the space program by some of the older men presented a rather troublesome problem. These space veterans felt that women lacked “the right stuff” to be astronauts. To **dispel** such prejudices, the women recognized the fact that they needed to perform as well as or better than their male counterparts. Candidates had to be smart, tough, and highly educated and had to be extraordinarily meticulous in everything they did. Physical strength, the one area where the men could often outperform the women, was not an important factor. During their year of basic training, the six women met the challenge. They proved their **mettle** in all essential situations.

Training to be an astronaut was a **daunting** task. The astronauts studied a range of subjects: astronomy, meteorology, geology, mathematics, navigation, and human anatomy. They spent hundreds of hours in the classroom learning the inner workings of every component of the space shuttle. Then they received hands-on experience in a **replica** of the space shuttle. The model was complete in even the smallest detail; therefore, the actual space shuttle was comfortably familiar to the astronauts, even when they went aboard for the first time.

Trainee astronauts spent time underwater to simulate the effects of weightlessness they would experience in space. They also endured flights aboard KC-135 planes, which flew almost vertically upward before turning back along a **protracted** flight path that curved toward the earth. This produced a sensation of weightlessness. These flights also gave other sensations, which led to the nauseated trainees **dubbing** the aircraft “the vomit comet.”

| |
|----------------|
| claustrophobia |
| colleague |
| condescend |
| contingent |
| daunt |
| deluge |
| dispel |
| dub |
| fanfare |
| fledgling |
| inane |
| mettle |
| negligible |
| protract |
| replica |

A critically important component of the program was survival training, both on land and at sea. What if the space shuttle's rocket engines and their backup systems failed while it was in orbit? The chance of this happening was **negligible**; still, the astronauts had to be prepared for every remote possibility. They practiced climbing inside fabric rescue balls that were thirty inches in diameter and could be rapidly inflated with oxygen. In an emergency, an astronaut would sit inside a ball waiting to be transferred to a rescue vehicle. Climbing into one of these was very unpleasant, especially for an individual suffering even a mild form of **claustrophobia**. Fortunately, it was decided that the ball was not a good solution and never flew on any shuttles.

Finally, in the spring of 1982, one of the six women graduates of the space program was chosen for Space Transportation System 7. She was Sally Ride, a scientist with an advanced degree in physics from Stanford University. Her areas of expertise were X-ray astronomy and lasers. As soon as the announcement was made, NASA was **deluged** with requests for interviews with the first American woman to venture into space. Dr. Ride cheerfully submitted to endless questions from reporters. She answered even the most **inane** questions with patience and good humor.

After the flood of publicity came a further year of intensive training geared to the specific requirements of the mission for which she had been chosen. Then, on June 18, 1983, along with four male **colleagues**, Dr. Sally Ride began her historic five-day flight aboard the space shuttle *Challenger*.

► **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. How did the women trainees **dispel** any doubts about their abilities?

2. Why would the space shuttle seem familiar to those boarding it for the first time?

3. What is the meaning of **contingent** as it is used in the passage?

4. Which part of the training would you find **daunting**?

5. How important is physical strength for astronauts?

6. Were women able to succeed in all areas of the training? Explain your answer.

7. Why would someone who was afraid of enclosed spaces be unhappy as an astronaut during the time Dr. Ride trained?

8. What is the meaning of **fanfare** as it is used in the passage?

9. How many women trained along with Dr. Ride?

10. Was the K-135 plane's **protracted** flight a short or long trip?

11. Why do you think reporters ask celebrities **inane** questions?

12. Why would it be inaccurate to say that the older male astronauts welcomed the female trainees?

| |
|----------------|
| claustrophobia |
| colleague |
| condescend |
| contingent |
| daunt |
| deluge |
| dispel |
| dub |
| fanfare |
| fledgling |
| inane |
| mettle |
| negligible |
| protract |
| replica |

13. What pet name did the trainees have for the K-135 plane?

14. What is the meaning of **deluge** as it is used in the passage?

15. Would it be accurate to describe Dr. Ride as a **fledgling** astronaut when she was chosen for her flight? Explain your answer.

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

-
- Old Norse was a northern European language spoken in Scandinavia until the fourteenth century. The Old Norse word *dubben* means “to strike” and was given a particular meaning when it was brought into English. A monarch, in the act of naming a person a knight, would

strike that person lightly on the shoulder with a sword while saying, “I **dub** thee Sir _____,” along with the person’s name. The word came to mean “to give a title to” and was later broadened to its present, more general, meaning.

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

adept

ə dept´

adj. Highly skilled; expert.

Blake is **adept** at decorating cakes, and he always brings a fancy cake to special events.

audible

ô´ də bəl

*adj.* Capable of being heard.

The sound of the harp was barely **audible** in the large hall.

.....
Say something that is not audible to your partner.

azure

azh´ ə

n. and *adj.* The blue color of a cloudless sky.

The **azure** of Caribbean waters is in striking contrast to the grayish green of more northern seas.

banter

ban´ tər

v. To exchange playful, teasing remarks.

The opposing players **bantered** nervously before the soccer match.

n. Light, playful conversation.

The backstage **banter** among the actors ended abruptly when the curtain rose for the first act.

capacious

kə pā´ shəs

*adj.* Able to hold a large amount; roomy.

The **capacious** closets of their new apartment would provide enough room for the clothes of her two teenagers, Mrs. Gupta decided.

.....
Tell your partner if you think your classroom is capacious or cozy.

copious

kō´ pē əs

adj. Large in quantity; abundant.

Mediterranean cooking uses **copious** amounts of olive oil.

crucial

krōō´ shəl

adj. Extremely important; vital in resolving something.

It is **crucial** that I get to school on time so I don't miss the test.

decelerate

dē sel´ ə rāt

v. To slow down or to cause to slow down.

The train **decelerated** to make a stop at the station.

deploy

di ploi´

v. 1. To arrange troops or equipment in position for battle.

The failure to **deploy** air support led to the army's defeat.

2. To put into use.

When the new art center was completely finished, the editor **deployed** three reporters to cover the dedication.



.....
Talk to your partner about how you deploy your skills in a favorite school subject.

facilitate

fə sil' ə tāt



v. To make easier.

Living in Mexico for two years **facilitated** my learning Spanish.

.....
Discuss with your partner ways you could facilitate doing your homework tonight.

fastidious

fə stid' ē əs

adj. 1. Paying close attention to detail.

The mustard stain on his sweater suggested to Lilly that Simon was not as **fastidious** about his clothes as he was about his desk, which was spotless.

2. Difficult to please.

My **fastidious** friend Dignora will allow her friends to enter her room only after they have removed their shoes.

fitful

fit' fəl

adj. Not steady; irregular.

After a **fitful** sleep, I awoke feeling groggy and unprepared for the first day of school.

grapple

grap' əl

v. 1. To struggle with in close combat; to wrestle.

Jake **grappled** with the dog to get it into the tub for a bath.

2. To come to grips with.

The community **grappled** with the problem of improving the quality of education in their schools.

n. An iron shaft with a claw for grasping and holding things.

The captain threw the **grapple**, hooking the abandoned vessel, and then drew it close enough to board.



.....
Share with your partner a problem you have had to grapple with.

pang

paŋ



n. A sudden sharp feeling of pain or distress.

Jarvis felt a **pang** of regret when he sold his old bicycle.

.....
Chat with your partner about how it feels to have hunger pangs.

precede

prē sēd'



v. To go or come before in time, rank, or position.

Omar's eighth-grade graduation **preceded** his attempts to get a summer job.

.....
Tell your partner what preceded your arrival at school today.

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in bold is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

1. (a) The millionaire **deployed** an army of lawyers to protect his money. ____
(b) The captain **deployed** the navy with great skill. ____
(c) Erin had many natural gifts, and in math she **deployed** them well. ____
(d) He **deployed** down the field with the ball in his grip. ____

2. (a) The **grapple** hooked on to the derelict boat, and the crew hauled it away. ____
(b) Alonso **grappled** with many problems during baseball practice. ____
(c) The two wrestlers **grappled** with each other. ____
(d) Put this **grapple** under your pillow to make it softer. ____

3. (a) Teddy was an **adept** wielder of a fishing rod. ____
(b) The wobbly toddler took his first **adept** steps this morning. ____
(c) The more you practice something, the more **adept** you become at it. ____
(d) Mark Twain was an **adept** teller of tales. ____

4. (a) The specks of dust are so small, they are barely **audible** to the naked eye. ____
(b) A dog whistle is **audible** to canines but not to humans. ____
(c) The sound was barely **audible**, so I turned up the volume. ____
(d) His story seemed so **inaudible**, yet every word of it was true. ____

5. (a) The batter **bantered** with the catcher before taking the first pitch. ____
(b) The actor smiled and began to **banter** with the audience. ____
(c) Salvador sat silent, ignoring the **banter** of the other students around him. ____
(d) The players **bantered** the ball back and forth, waiting to begin the game. ____

6. (a) You need to drink **copious** amounts of water in sweltering heat. ____
(b) That tiny car is not **copious** enough for six people. ____
(c) There are a **copious** number of eggs in the refrigerator. ____
(d) Tiana grew more and more **copious** as the day went on. ____

7. (a) Imani is a **fastidious** eater and prefers organic vegetables. ____
(b) When it comes to cleaning my room, my parents want me to be more **fastidious**. ____
(c) The hospital staff is **fastidious** when it comes to washing hands. ____
(d) Her stories are mostly **fastidious**, with just a small grain of truth. ____

8. (a) Jada moved to the center of the stage and strummed a few **pangs** on her guitar. ____
 (b) Around noon, I started to feel hunger **pangs**. ____
 (c) Sydney felt a **pang** of regret when she saw that going back was impossible. ____
 (d) The builders removed the **pang** and continued with their work. ____
9. (a) Without instructions I had no idea how to **precede** with the next step. ____
 (b) A king **precedes** a prince in rank. ____
 (c) **Precede** the cucumbers after the danger of frost has passed. ____
 (d) The first day of school **precedes** the last day of school. ____
10. (a) The war was a **crucial** event in the country's history. ____
 (b) Bianca's **crucial** attitude to school meant her grades weren't very good. ____
 (c) **Crucial** budget decisions await the next principal. ____
 (d) This book is **crucial** for our research project. ____

8B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *color*?
 (a) copious (b) azure (c) hew (d) hue
2. Which word or words go with *lots of room*?
 (a) copious (b) capricious (c) capacious (d) spacious
3. Which word or words go with *movement*?
 (a) decelerate (b) banter (c) accelerate (d) hurtle
4. Which word or words go with *make easier*?
 (a) interrogate (b) facilitate (c) deploy (d) grapple
5. Which word or words go with *irregular*?
 (a) fastidious (b) capacious (c) fitful (d) imminent
6. Which word or words go with *expert*?
 (a) adept (b) exquisite (c) fitful (d) extinct

| |
|------------|
| adept |
| audible |
| azure |
| banter |
| capacious |
| copious |
| crucial |
| decelerate |
| deploy |
| facilitate |
| fastidious |
| fitful |
| grapple |
| pang |
| precede |

7. Which word or words go with *senses*?
(a) copious (b) audible (c) fragrant (d) crucial
8. Which word or words go with *plentiful*?
(a) abundant (b) copious (c) bountiful (d) fastidious
9. Which word or words go with *important*?
(a) adept (b) fitful (c) crucial (d) momentous
10. Which word or words go with *put to use*?
(a) deploy (b) grapple (c) utilize (d) precede

8C

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. A **fitful**
- (a) sleep left me only half awake as I stumbled out of bed.
 - (b) river is dangerous to canoe on.
 - (c) blade of grass is perfectly straight.
 - (d) computer game ran smoothly and without a problem.
2. The **azure**
- (a) water of the lagoon reflected the endless blue of the sky.
 - (b) sky above us made it evident that it would not storm soon.
 - (c) is a precious blue stone belonging to the sapphire family.
 - (d) was used on ships to help them find their position.
3. **Bantering**
- (a) will mix the flour, salt, and water.
 - (b) in the locker room after the game was friendly.
 - (c) is best left to the professionals.
 - (d) between the two brothers got heated at times but never violent.
4. A **capacious**
- (a) mind can hold an astonishing amount of information.
 - (b) trunk accompanied families travelling by steamship to India.
 - (c) insect glided across the surface of the pond.
 - (d) backpack held all the family's food as they hiked across the forest.

5. The **deceleration**

- (a) of Jesse's birthday party is on Friday.
- (b) from 100 mph to 20 mph in three seconds requires good brakes.
- (c) of the bus at the stoplight was sudden.
- (d) is best when spread with peanut butter.

6. To **facilitate**

- (a) back and forth will only make me sick.
- (b) production of the automobile, Henry Ford invented the production line.
- (c) entry to the lake, the large boulders were moved to the side.
- (d) delivery of the items, I offered to transport them myself.

7. I felt a **pang**

- (a) of anger when I found out I had to share my room with my sister.
- (b) in the dark and thought it was a small animal.
- (c) in the air and knew that spring had at last arrived.
- (d) of pain when the enormous dog stepped on my foot.

8. Who **preceded**

- (a) John F. Kennedy as president of the United States?
- (b) to turn straw into gold in the children's fairy tale?
- (c) Henry the VIII on the English throne?
- (d) people from entering the country?

| | |
|--|------------|
| | adept |
| | audible |
| | azure |
| | banter |
| | capacious |
| | copious |
| | crucial |
| | decelerate |
| | deploy |
| | facilitate |
| | fastidious |
| | fitful |
| | grapple |
| | pang |
| | precede |

8D

Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. Someone I am likely to **banter** with is

_____ .

2. I am **fastidious** about

_____ .

3. A problem I sometimes **grapple** with is

_____ .

4. If something is **crucial**, that means it is

_____ .

5. The letters ABC **precede** the letters XYZ because

_____ .

6. If I practiced, I could become **adept** at

_____ .

7. A **pang** is

_____ .

8. An example of something that is **audible** is

_____ .

9. Something that is **azure** is

_____ .

10. To **facilitate** better learning, teachers should

_____ .



Women in Space, Part Two

On June 18, 1983, the space shuttle *Challenger* rose from the launch pad to begin a five-day mission. Astronaut Sally Ride, the flight engineer, was not the first woman in space. Two Soviet female cosmonauts had **preceded** her. But she was making history as the first American woman to make such a flight.

The thunderous roar of the rockets filled her headphones, and a **pang** of fear gripped her as she wondered if everything was working properly. The feeling quickly passed. In less than ten minutes *Challenger* was in orbit, floating almost two hundred miles above Earth. The only sound was the barely **audible** hum of the fans circulating the air. Outside, the sky was jet black; with no air at this altitude to scatter the sunlight, the sky had lost its familiar **azure** hue.

Released from the harnesses that held them in place, the five crew members floated weightlessly in zero gravity. It was a novel experience for all but the shuttle commander, Bob Crippen. He was the only crew member to have flown in space before. As the astronauts relaxed, they began **bantering** among themselves. Dr. Ride informed ground control that they had “three turkeys and two hams” aboard, although she did not reveal their identities.

Because the shuttle orbited Earth every ninety minutes, the sun rose and set sixteen times every twenty-four hours; night and day, therefore, had little meaning for the five astronauts. During her first rest period, Dr. Ride slept **fitfully**, but soon she adjusted to the routine aboard the shuttle. She once admitted that she was not a **fastidious** housekeeper, but she was careful to stow away everything she did not have an immediate need for. The cramped space of the shuttle’s living quarters made neatness important. Eating in space was no problem. Of course the astronauts didn’t sprinkle salt on their food; it would just float away. Disposing of bodily waste—a subject that had intrigued reporters—was **facilitated** by using an air suction device in the toilet.

The **capacious** cargo bay was located behind the crew’s living quarters. On this particular mission it held two large communication satellites, known as comsats. It also held a \$23 million orbiting laboratory designed to carry out various experiments while separated from the shuttle. In addition to her duties as the flight engineer, responsible for checking the workings of the spacecraft, Dr. Ride was also in charge of **deploying** the orbiting laboratory once the two comsats had been released.

adept

audible

azure

banter

capacious

copious

crucial

decelerate

deploy

facilitate

fastidious

fitful

grapple

pang

precede

One of Dr. Ride’s qualifications for this mission had been that she was especially **adept** at handling the robot arm. The arm was a jointed fifty-foot pole with a **grapple** at the end. It was operated by remote control from the shuttle’s flight deck. Dr. Ride used the robot arm to remove the orbiting laboratory from the cargo bay and to release it so that it could float freely away from the shuttle. From a distance of one thousand feet, a camera in the orbiting laboratory took spectacular photographs of the shuttle. These were beamed to Earth and shown on television. At the conclusion of the experiments, the shuttle moved closer to the orbiting laboratory. Dr. Ride then recovered the lab and tucked it away in the cargo bay, again using the robot arm.

With their work completed and the flight nearing its end, the shuttle’s five crew members prepared to return to Earth. Because their bodies had lost fluids to adjust to weightlessness, they drank **copious** amounts of water. In addition, they put away everything that had been floating freely in the cabin. Once within Earth’s gravity, these objects would crash to the floor.

The astronauts knew that reentering Earth’s atmosphere at just the right angle was **crucial** for a successful landing. During reentry, the shuttle needed to **decelerate** sharply. The friction caused by air resistance would heat up its exterior to over 2,500 degrees Fahrenheit. But the special heat tiles on the outside would prevent the shuttle from burning up and would keep the interior comfortable.

All went well at the conclusion of Space Transportation System 7; after a ninety-eight-orbit flight of two and a half million miles, *Challenger* landed safely at Edwards Air Force Base in California. One of the banners that greeted Dr. Ride as she emerged read “HERSTORY MADE TODAY BY SALLY RIDE.”

- **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. How does the sky change as one gets above Earth’s atmosphere?

2. Why would it be inaccurate to describe the shuttle living quarters as **capacious**?

3. In what ways do you think the lack of gravity **facilitated** the astronauts' work on the space ship?

4. How was Dr. Ride's sleep affected when she first went into orbit?

5. What is the meaning of **grapple** as it is used in the passage?

6. What task **preceded** the release of the orbiting laboratory?

7. Do you think crew members are likely to **banter** as they board the space shuttle? Explain.

8. What did Dr. Ride hear as the *Challenger* lifted off?

9. Why did the astronauts need to be **fastidious** about putting everything away before reentry?

10. What would probably happen if the shuttle failed to **decelerate** on reentry?

11. Why is a plentiful supply of drinking water required on a shuttle mission?

| | |
|--|------------|
| | adept |
| | audible |
| | azure |
| | banter |
| | capacious |
| | copious |
| | crucial |
| | decelerate |
| | deploy |
| | facilitate |
| | fastidious |
| | fitful |
| | grapple |
| | pang |
| | precede |

12. What is the meaning of **deploy** as it is used in the passage?

13. What **crucial** role did the heat tiles on the outside of the shuttle play?

14. In what way must the pilot be **adept** during the return to Earth?

15. Why might the astronauts feel a **pang** of regret upon returning to Earth?

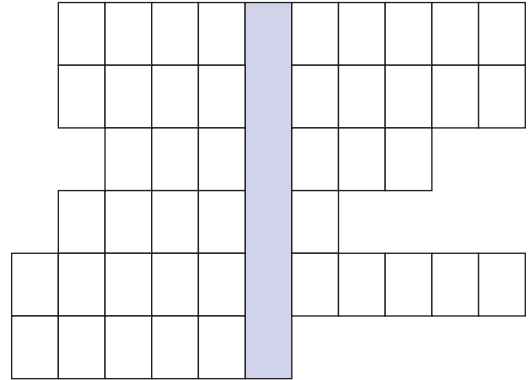
Fun & Fascinating **FACTS**

- During the Middle Ages much time and energy was devoted to trying to turn common metals, such as iron or lead, into precious metals, like gold and silver. The study of this subject was known as alchemy. A person who had acquired knowledge of how to bring about such miraculous change was known as an **adept**. In time, the word was extended to include anyone who was highly skilled in an activity. Then later it came into more common use as an adjective, meaning “highly skilled.”
- The adjective **crucial** comes from the Latin *crux*, which means “a cross.” Ancient Romans used tall wooden crosses for a variety of reasons, including as signposts in the road. If a traveler came to a fork in the road, it was extremely important, or *crucial*, to take the correct path; the cross placed there as a signpost guided the traveler in the right direction.

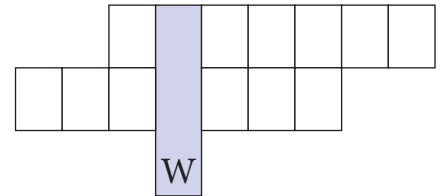
Review

Hidden Message In the boxes provided, write the words from Lessons 5 through 8 that are missing in each of the sentences. The number after each sentence is the lesson the word is from. When the exercise is finished, the shaded boxes will spell out a short poem by American humorist Ogden Nash (1902-1971).*

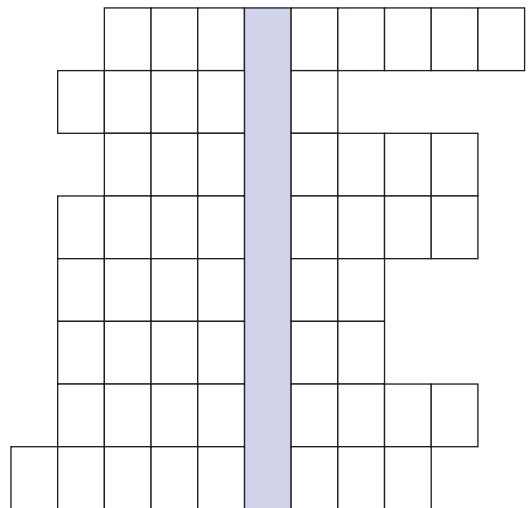
1. A(n) _____ inspection revealed no flaws. (6)
2. The ballplayer wouldn't _____ to acknowledge the hecklers in the stands. (7)
3. Jesse had no _____ of what he intended to do. (5)
4. I joined in my classmates' playful _____. (8)
5. The police will _____ the suspects. (6)
6. The sailors who took part in the _____ were punished. (5)



7. The _____ had hooked on to a large object on the seabed. (8)
8. They will _____ the woman in court on Monday. (6)



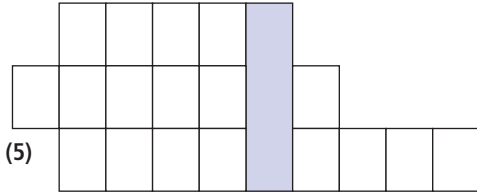
9. The _____ bird flew for the very first time. (7)
10. Telling the truth will _____ these rumors. (7)
11. A(n) _____ appearance is not appropriate at an expensive restaurant. (5)
12. Dr. Ransom is a _____ of Dr. Sanchez. (7)
13. I am _____ by such arrogant remarks. (5)
14. I took _____ notes during the lecture. (8)
15. She _____ with her friends to play the practical joke. (6)
16. My mind was filled with a(n) _____ of ideas. (5)



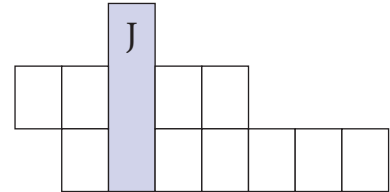
* From *Verses From 1929 On* by Ogden Nash. © 1941 by Ogden Nash. First appeared in *The Saturday Evening Post*. By permission of Little, Brown and Company.

Lessons 5–8 Review continued

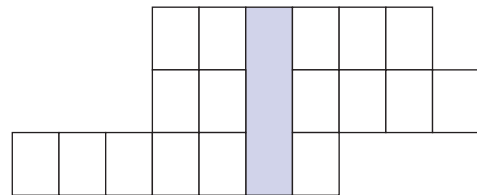
17. Professional painters are very _____ workers. (8)
 18. Without any laws, we would have _____. (6)
 19. The toddler was suspected of _____ cookies from the jar. (5)



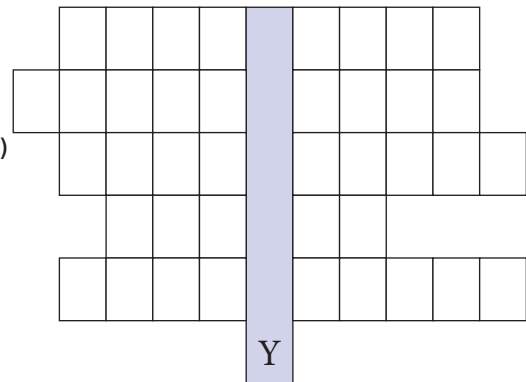
20. _____ jokes are rarely funny. (7)
 21. You'll _____ in July without air-conditioning. (6)



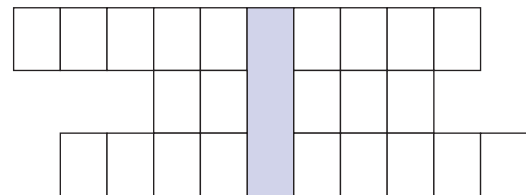
22. Today we _____ on a vast new project. (5)
 23. Sometimes it's _____ to get a second medical opinion. (5)
 24. The movie _____ life in a small midwestern town. (5)



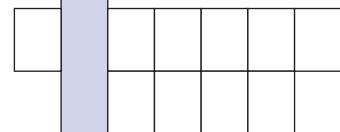
25. Pat's _____ behavior shocked the class. (5)
 26. Apply the brake so the car will _____. (8)
 27. The new computerized system will _____ filling orders. (8)
 28. Her _____ manner had a calming effect on us. (5)
 29. The negotiations were _____ over a year. (7)



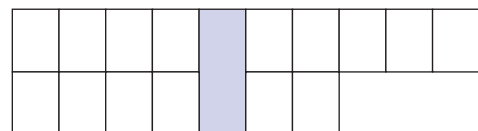
30. Mr. Cass threatened to _____ our cell phones. (5)
 31. The team's _____ was tested by the Bears. (7)
 32. The debate made very clear the _____ between the candidates. (6)



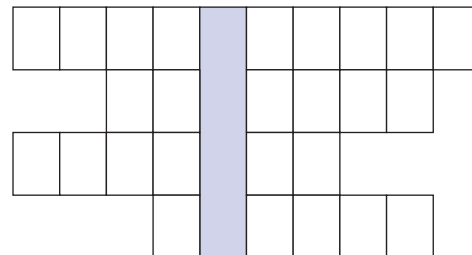
33. This is a(n) _____ of an ancient Korean vase. (7)
 34. Don't let your opponent's size _____ you. (7)



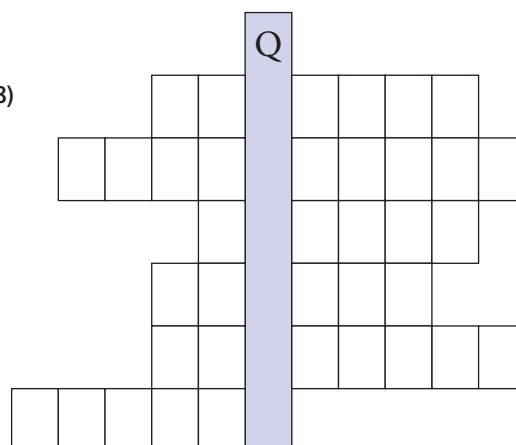
35. The time of departure is _____ on the weather. (7)
 36. So much time has _____ since I was in preschool. (6)



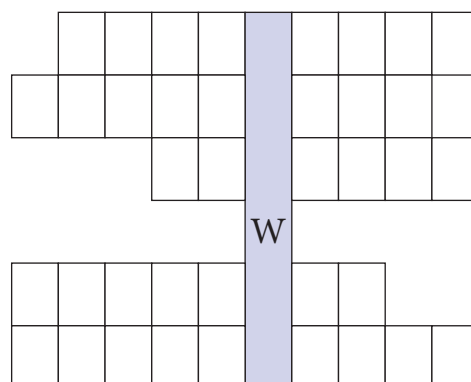
- 37. I need more time to _____ all this information. (6)
- 38. Why we _____ sports figures baffles me. (6)
- 39. His _____ behavior made us question his state of mind. (6)
- 40. I had to _____ them for their bad manners. (5)



- 41. It is _____ that you attend the student council meeting. (8)
- 42. The cost of adding an extra coat of paint to the small room is _____. (7)
- 43. The _____ washed away parts of the road. (7)
- 44. Progress was _____ at first but soon became steady. (8)
- 45. The fire was an unforeseen _____. (6)
- 46. Can we _____ two guards at the front door? (8)



- 47. A(n) _____ trunk held all our belongings. (8)
- 48. The police did not _____ the thief yet. (6)
- 49. Monday and Tuesday _____ Wednesday in a week. (8)
- 50. When the music began, the president's arrival seemed _____. (6)
- 51. A(n) _____ person will not tolerate sloppy work. (8)



Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

abet

ə bet'



v. To encourage or assist in some activity, especially a questionable one.
Randy **abetted** his friend in stealing pumpkins by helping him lug them home.

.....
Discuss with your partner how to respond to friends who ask you to abet them in vandalizing your school.

agile

aj' əl



adj. 1. Able to move quickly and easily; nimble.
Alexandra's **agile** steps followed Wilfredo's as the band played a tango.
2. Able to think quickly.
In the final round of the chess tournament, Gary's **agile** mind enabled him to think five moves ahead.

agility n. (ə jil' ə tē) Quickness of mind or body.
Our karate instructor carefully developed our **agility** through repeated practice of the basic movements.

.....
Chat with your partner about how a swimming coach might help swimmers develop agility in the water.

allot

ə lät'

v. To assign or distribute as a portion or share.
Ms. Kaplan usually **allotted** fifteen minutes at the beginning of each French class for conversation practice.

balmy

bām' ē

adj. Soothing, mild.
Instead of the **balmy** spring weather we were expecting, the skies turned gray, and a light snow fell.

congregate

kən' grə gāt

v. To come together in a group; to assemble.
The principal instructed us to **congregate** in the parking lot while the firefighters checked the building.

divert

də vɜrt'



v. 1. To turn aside.
By sandbagging the shore, we can **divert** some of the floodwaters.
2. To entertain or amuse.
A juggler **diverted** the audience during the intermission.
diversion n. 1. The act of turning from a course or concern.
Seeing a beautiful rainbow was a **diversion** from the long, boring drive.
2. Something that amuses or entertains.
Collecting shells of so many colors and sizes was a **diversion** our whole family enjoyed on our visit to the beach.

.....
Tell your partner something that might divert you on your way home from school.

humdrum
hum´ drum

adj. Lacking excitement; boring or monotonous.
Bagging groceries is a **humdrum** job, but the flexible hours allow me to finish all my homework.

influx
in´ fluks

n. A flowing or pouring in; arrival in massive numbers.
Local restaurant owners are hiring extra help because of the expected **influx** of visitors during the holidays.

intricate
in´ tri kət



adj. Complicated; having many related details or parts.
Chen builds **intricate** sculptures using metal pieces she finds at junkyards.

.....
Work with your partner to make something simple, like tying your shoe, seem intricate.

memento
mə men´ tō

n. Something kept as a reminder of a past event; a souvenir.
Madelaine kept the sand dollar as a **memento** of her day at the New Jersey shore.

query
kwir´ ē



n. A question.
Raise your hand if you have a **query** to ask the teacher.
v. To ask or ask about.
Mustafa **queried** his great-aunt about what life was like when she was young.

.....
Query your partner about what he or she has eaten today.

sporadic
spə rad´ ik

adj. Happening occasionally; not regularly.
Last summer, between **sporadic** acting jobs, we worked as lifeguards.

staple
stā´ pəl



n. 1. A basic food that is used frequently and in large amounts.
Rice and beans are **staples** in many households.
2. A U-shaped fastener with sharp ends.
Remove the **staples** before you put those papers through the copy machine.
v. To attach with staples.
After the students finished writing their reports, they **stapled** the pages together.
adj. Most important, principal.
Wheat and corn are **staple** crops of Canada.

.....
List for your partner the five pieces of clothing that are staple garments in your closet.

tumult
tōō' mult

n. Noisy excitement; an uproar or disturbance.
Entering the house through the chimney, the squirrel caused a **tumult** until my sister finally caught it and released it in the backyard.

tumultuous *adj.* Marked by uproar or excitement, turbulent.
A **tumultuous** crowd waited at the airport to greet the triumphant Mexican soccer team.



.....
Tell your partner about the last tumultuous event you attended.

unseemly
un sēm' lē

adj. Not suitable; inappropriate or improper.
The two fathers had an **unseemly** argument at the monthly PTA meeting.

9A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 9. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) to distribute them. (c) To divert funds is
(b) to account fully for them. (d) To allot funds is

2. (a) A staple is (c) A memento is
(b) a basic food. (d) a short note.

3. (a) Tumult is (c) quickness of mind or body.
(b) Agility is (d) a feeling of unreasonable panic.

4. (a) An influx is something (c) kept as a reminder of a past event.
(b) A memento is something (d) that is inappropriate and out of place.

5. (a) A humdrum task (c) is one that is quickly completed.
(b) An intricate task (d) is one that lacks interest or excitement.

| |
|------------|
| abet |
| agile |
| allot |
| balmy |
| congregate |
| divert |
| humdrum |
| influx |
| intricate |
| memento |
| query |
| sporadic |
| staple |
| tumult |
| unseemly |

6. (a) question closely. (c) entertain or amuse.
 (b) To congregate is to (d) To divert is to
-
7. (a) A query is (c) movement into a place.
 (b) An influx is (d) a turning point.
-
8. (a) An unseemly proposal is one (c) that is concisely written.
 (b) that is very detailed. (d) An intricate proposal is one
-
9. (a) be suspicious of that person. (c) To abet someone is to
 (b) give support to that person. (d) To query someone is to
-
10. (a) is one filled with excitement. (c) A balmy day
 (b) is one that is boring. (d) A tumultuous day
-

9B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

- Rain was **coming down from time to time** all through the day we had chosen for painting the house.
- Beautiful beaches and impressive rain forests have helped make tourism a **very important** industry in Hawaii.
- Lulu's attention to her book was **turned away** when her baby brother started crying.
- Anyone wishing to be a gymnast must be **able to move quickly and easily**.

5. The campers were **assigned as their portion** one dish of ice cream at the end-of-summer banquet.
6. Mom made us spit out our gum before the memorial service because chewing it, she said, would be most **unsuitable for such an occasion**.
7. The **warm and gentle** breezes from the ocean kept us cool all summer.
8. Kito's friends **asked a number of questions of** him about his new pet snake.
9. The surprise visit from the basketball star caused **great excitement and confusion** in the school.
10. Last year scientists warned of a possible **continuous pouring in** of killer bees from South to North America, but it never happened.

9C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

| |
|------------|
| abet |
| agile |
| allot |
| balmy |
| congregate |
| divert |
| humdrum |
| influx |
| intricate |
| memento |
| query |
| sporadic |
| staple |
| tumult |
| unseemly |

1. Which of the following might be considered a **diversion**?
 - (a) doing homework
 - (b) getting stuck in traffic
 - (c) watching television
 - (d) playing softball
2. Which of the following could be **intricate**?
 - (a) a drawing
 - (b) a plan
 - (c) the plot of a movie
 - (d) a grimace
3. Which of the following are **staples**?
 - (a) beans
 - (b) rice
 - (c) ice cubes
 - (d) cookies
4. Which of the following needs to be **agile**?
 - (a) an Olympic skater
 - (b) a downhill skier
 - (c) an artist
 - (d) a hockey goalie
5. Which of the following is a **query**?
 - (a) "Feeling better?"
 - (b) "What's the matter?"
 - (c) "Let's go."
 - (d) "How do you open this?"

6. Which of the following can **congregate**?
- (a) people (c) plants
(b) animals (d) birds
7. Which of the following could be **humdrum**?
- (a) a job (c) a calamity
(b) a movie (d) a mutiny
8. Which of the following might be **tumultuous**?
- (a) a sleeping infant (c) a parade
(b) an election (d) a fireplace

9D

Word Study: Similar Meanings

Choose from the two words provided and use each word only once when completing each sentence. One space should be left blank.

intricate / complicated

1. The wallpaper has a(n) _____ pattern of intertwined branches and birds.
2. The math equations were more _____ than he expected.
3. The number 18,074,030 is an extremely _____ one.

sporadic / occasional

4. The _____ weather patterns make them hard to predict.
5. Even though Malcolm is trying to cut down on caffeine, he enjoys a(n) _____ cup of tea.
6. Emily's visits were _____ and then stopped altogether.

fitful / irregular

7. The doctor has concerns about the patient's _____ heartbeat.
8. After a(n) _____ sleep, Leonard had a hard time getting up.
9. The waves grew more _____ as the hurricane neared the coast.

replica / copy

- 10. A _____ of twelve inches would be a foot.
- 11. The bank needs a _____ of your father's signature for its records.
- 12. The *Mayflower* docked in Plymouth, Massachusetts, is a _____ of the Pilgrims' ship.

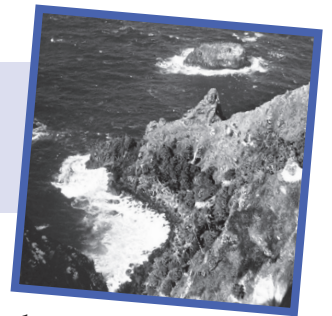
assimilate / absorb

- 13. A sponge can _____ six times its weight in water.
- 14. Katy seemed unable to _____ the meaning of the word *no*.
- 15. The brain has to _____ sensory information from many different sources.



Vocabulary in Context

Read the passage.



The Children of the *Bounty*

Many people dream of living on a remote tropical island where there are no cars and little crime. For the people of Pitcairn Island, this dream is their reality. Until 1789, Pitcairn was uninhabited. In that year, Fletcher Christian arrived at and settled on this tiny island in the South Pacific. With him were eight other mutineers from the *Bounty* and eighteen Tahitians. By the late 1800s the island's population had grown to over two hundred. Today, the number has dwindled to fewer than fifty. However, the island's governing council is not greatly concerned about the declining population. It receives thousands of **queries** from people all over the world who would like to live there. Nevertheless, it rarely issues the official entry document called "Licence to Land and Reside." Pitcairners have no wish to be swamped by an **influx** of new residents.

Life on Pitcairn is easygoing. The inhabitants enjoy **balmy** weather all year round, and the island has plenty of water. Sweet potatoes, melons, bananas, and coffee are among the crops grown in its fertile soil. The older inhabitants spend most of their time fishing, growing vegetables, and making wooden carvings and woven baskets.

| |
|------------|
| abet |
| agile |
| allot |
| balmy |
| congregate |
| divert |
| humdrum |
| influx |
| intricate |
| memento |
| query |
| sporadic |
| staple |
| tumult |
| unseemly |

Because life changes little from day to day, visits from ships passing by on their way from the Panama Canal to New Zealand are eagerly awaited. The island's steep cliffs and lack of harbors make it impossible for ships to come to land; they must anchor about a mile offshore. When a ship arrives, islanders **congregate** at the landing in Adamstown, the island's only town. There they watch the launching of the forty-foot longboat that goes out to meet the ship to replenish supplies and to sell **mementos**. During rough weather, when the longboat is pitching wildly, those on board have a formidable task getting from the boat to the deck of the ship by rope ladder. Only the most **agile** attempt it.

The crews on these passing ships are eager to buy the carvings and baskets made by the islanders. **Intricately** carved replicas of the *Bounty* are popular items. They can sell for several hundred dollars or more, depending on the skill of the carver. The ships' visits are **sporadic**; weeks or even months go by without one. For this reason, the Pitcairners take advantage of these visits to trade fish, fruits, and vegetables for canned goods and **staples**, such as flour and sugar, that they cannot provide for themselves. Everything obtained from passing ships is **allotted** equally among the island's families. In this way, no one lacks the necessities.

This tropical paradise, however, is not for everyone. Young people often feel frustrated by the lack of opportunity. Many of them wish to exchange what they regard as the **humdrum** existence on the island for what they believe will be more exciting lives in the outside world. Not only do they find limitations in jobs unappealing, but they also complain that life on Pitcairn offers few **diversions**. Pitcairn Island once had very strict moral codes, which prohibited displays of affection, such as holding hands in public, and dancing, which was regarded as **unseemly**. While the rules aren't as strict these days, many young people leave the island, though some return later, unable to cope with the **tumult** of the modern world.

Pitcairn, a volcanic speck of rock less than two square miles in area and inhabited by only nine families, has a fascination for the outside world out of all proportion to its size. It has been the subject of no fewer than 2,500 books and articles. One reason, of course, is obvious—its dramatic past, a past that began on an April morning in 1789 when Captain Bligh was rudely awakened to discover that Fletcher Christian, **abetted** by mutinous crew members, had seized control of the *Bounty*.

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. Why are there no heating bills on Pitcairn?

2. Why hasn't there been an **influx** of tourists to Pitcairn?

3. What is the meaning of **staples** as it is used in the passage?

4. Why do you suppose the ships' visits are **sporadic**?

5. Name two activities that Pitcairn teenagers might find **humdrum**.

6. In what ways might teenagers from Pitcairn Island find life in a U. S. city **tumultuous**?

7. According to the passage, what is the content of a lot of the mail sent to Pitcairn?

8. How do the islanders make sure no one lacks necessary food?

9. What is the meaning of **diversions** as it is used in the passage?

| |
|------------|
| abet |
| agile |
| allot |
| balmy |
| congregate |
| divert |
| humdrum |
| influx |
| intricate |
| memento |
| query |
| sporadic |
| staple |
| tumult |
| unseemly |

10. Why is it inaccurate to say that few Pitcairners are interested in a ship's arrival?

11. Why was showing affection in public banned on Pitcairn?

12. Why is a carving of the *Bounty* considered a suitable **memento** of Pitcairn?

13. What determines the price of an **intricately** carved model of the *Bounty*?

14. How many of those who originally sailed to Pitcairn with Christian had helped him with the mutiny?

15. Why would it be inaccurate to say that any of the islanders could be sent out on the longboat to board the ship?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

-
- We usually use the adjective **balmy** to refer to conditions of climate or weather (a *balmy* day; a *balmy* breeze). But *balmy* has a secondary, slang meaning of “odd or peculiar in behavior.” An alternative spelling for this meaning is *barmy*, which has an interesting origin. *Barm* is the yeasty foam that rises to the top of certain alcoholic beverages as they are being brewed. A connection was made between this substance and odd or peculiar behavior. A person acting strangely was described as *barmy*. Confusion then occurred between two quite separate and distinct words. The result is that a person acting oddly can be described as *balmy* or *barmy*. A gentle breeze, however, can only be *balmy*, not *barmy*.
-
- The Latin verb *fluere* means “to flow” and forms the root of **influx**, “a flowing or pouring in.” Other words formed from this root include *fluid*, “any substance that flows”; *fluent*, “able to write or speak in a flowing, easy way”; *fluctuate*, “to move back and forth or up and down in a wavelike or flowing manner”; *flux*, “a flowing movement,” also “a state of constant change”; and *confluence*, “a flowing together, as of two streams or rivers.”

| |
|------------|
| abet |
| agile |
| allot |
| balmy |
| congregate |
| divert |
| humdrum |
| influx |
| intricate |
| memento |
| query |
| sporadic |
| staple |
| tumult |
| unseemly |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

abject

ab´jekt

adj. Most miserable; wretched.

The stray dog lived in **abject** conditions until the neighbor children began to care for her.

advocate

ad´və kāt

v. To plead in favor of; to defend.

This organization **advocates** the release of all people imprisoned for their beliefs.

n. (ad´və kæt) One who argues for or defends a person, group, or idea.

The senator has been a lifelong **advocate** for preschool education for all children.



.....
Advocate to your partner a cause you feel strongly about.

atrocious

ə trās´ ə tē

n. An act of great cruelty and wickedness.

It is important to talk about and try to prevent the **atrocities** we see every day on the news.

atrocious *adj.* (ə´trō´shəs) 1. Very brutal, wicked, or cruel.

The principal says that bullying is **atrocious** and that the school staff is committed to eliminating it.

2. Appallingly bad; outrageous.

The owners of the kennel were prosecuted after reporters revealed that the animals lived under **atrocious** conditions.



.....
Talk to your partner about an atrocity you have heard about and how it could have been avoided.

commemorate

kə mem´ ə rāt

v. To serve as a memorial to; to remember in a solemn manner.

The tablet on the front of the house **commemorates** its importance as a station on the Underground Railroad.

dialect

dī´ ə lekt

n. A form of a language spoken in a certain geographical region that has its own grammar, pronunciation, and vocabulary.

A Spanish-speaking person from Madrid might not completely understand a **dialect** spoken in Cuba.

dire

dīr

adj. Having terrible consequences; urgent or desperate.

The murder of an Austrian crown prince in 1914 had extremely **dire** consequences.



.....
Discuss with your partner what dire consequences there might be if you disobeyed your parents.

elite
e lēt'

n. A group that enjoys superior status to others.
People in the social **elite** of New York City use private cars so they do not have to ride the subways.

adj. Considered superior to others.
The eight Ivy League institutions are considered **elite** compared to other universities, though the quality of instruction is often the same.

enhance
en hāns'



v. To make greater or better.
The large window in our new kitchen **enhances** the room's light, airy feeling.

.....
Talk to your partner about improvements that could enhance your learning experience at school, such as more study halls or better computers.

flagrant
flā' grānt

adj. Clearly offensive or bad; conspicuously acting against what is right.
Leaving school grounds early is a **flagrant** violation of school rules.

languish
lan' gwish

v. To lose hope, strength, or vitality because of neglect or bad conditions.
We **languished** on the porch as the rain soaked the picnic blanket and all the food we had laid out.

mute
myōt



v. To soften or tone down the sound of.
The state legislature has agreed to build walls at the airport to **mute** the roar of the jet engines for nearby residents.

adj. Not speaking or not able to speak; silent.
The little boy remained **mute** when his new preschool teacher asked his name.

.....
Tell your partner the appropriate times and places to mute your voice.

raze
rāz

v. To level to the ground; to destroy completely.
Just as the row of seventeenth-century buildings was about to be **razed**, the preservation society requested a delay.

reprisal
ri prī' zəl



n. A retaliation for an injury.
We decided there would be no **reprisals** for the high school students who painted graffiti on the walls.

.....
Chat with partner about whether there is ever a situation when reprisals are appropriate.

turmoil
tur' moil

n. A state of confusion or agitation; tumult.
With flood waters rising and an order to evacuate our home in an hour, my family was in a **turmoil**, trying to decide what to do first.

wreak
rĕk

v. 1. To bring about or inflict.

The tornado **wreaked** destruction along the path it followed through the center of town.

2. To express or vent.

Sahil **wreaked** his anger by pounding on the hood of the car.



.....
Discuss with your partner a time when bad weather wreaked damage upon a local place.

10A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in bold is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

- (a) I **wreaked** silently in and out to control my breathing. ____
(b) The Black Death **wreaked** devastation across Europe. ____
(c) A country's leader can **wreak** havoc by making a false move. ____
(d) The imminent arrival of the hurricane **wreaked** our plans for the weekend. ____
- (a) The Dalai Lama has been a lifelong **advocate** for world peace. ____
(b) The class **advocates** that they should watch a movie instead of take a test. ____
(c) **Advocates** grow best in tropical and subtropical climates. ____
(d) Parents need to be **advocates** for their children in the healthcare system. ____
- (a) Leaving the gate unlocked was a **flagrant** breach of the rules. ____
(b) The most **flagrant** crimes often get the most news coverage. ____
(c) The **flagrant** honeysuckle is Ty's favorite flower. ____
(d) Johanna loves the **flagrant** smell of freshly cut grass. ____
- (a) Siya's grade was **razed** from a C to a B. ____
(b) The old library is being **razed** to make way for a new one. ____
(c) The floor needs to be **razed** six inches. ____
(d) Much of the building was **razed** to the ground by the fire. ____
- (a) The bear sighting has the neighborhood in **turmoil**. ____
(b) He threw the ball against the **turmoil** and watched it roll away. ____
(c) When anarchy was unleashed, the whole country was in **turmoil**. ____
(d) Wrap the fish in **turmoil** before you grill it. ____

| |
|-------------|
| abject |
| advocate |
| atrocious |
| commemorate |
| dialect |
| dire |
| elite |
| enhance |
| flagrant |
| languish |
| mute |
| raze |
| reprisal |
| turmoil |
| wreak |

6. (a) Self-driving cars will **enhance** road safety by removing human error. ____
(b) The hikers were **enhanced** temporarily under the shelter during the storm. ____
(c) This new product is guaranteed to **enhance** your hair's health. ____
(d) Having a positive attitude **enhances** your chances of success. ____
7. (a) My application for the summer job **languished** at the bottom of the pile. ____
(b) Hope **languished** before the rescue team showed up. ____
(c) The city **languished** millions of dollars on a new visitors' center. ____
(d) The team **languished** at the bottom of the league for most of the season. ____
8. (a) I **commemorated** Angelina for winning the spelling bee. ____
(b) We **commemorate** the birth of our nation every Fourth of July. ____
(c) The school **commemorates** Martin Luther King Day by giving everyone a day off. ____
(d) Kimiko **commemorated** the poem and recited it perfectly at the concert. ____
9. (a) Annie was **mute** with awe when she saw a whale for the first time. ____
(b) You can respond to my question or just remain **mute**. ____
(c) I **muted** the television to listen to my brother's story. ____
(d) **Mute** the tree before it falls on the house. ____
10. (a) An **elite** team was sent to the spelling bee and won. ____
(b) Only the **elite** were sent invitations to the ball in the New York City penthouse. ____
(c) Should I dye my hair **elite** or dark? ____
(d) Light the fire before it gets too cold and **elite**. ____

10B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *worthy of respect*?
 (a) illustrious (b) notable (c) elite (d) dialect
2. Which word or words go with *conflict*?
 (a) turbulence (b) enhance (c) turmoil (d) tumult
3. Which word or words go with *improve*?
 (a) wreak (b) enhance (c) raze (d) elevate
4. Which word or words go with *get rid of*?
 (a) commemorate (b) enhance (c) annihilate (d) raze
5. Which word or words go with *speech*?
 (a) reprisal (b) dialect (c) mute (d) turmoil
6. Which word or words go with *retaliate*?
 (a) advocate (b) reprisal (c) banter (d) languish
7. Which word or words go with *terrible*?
 (a) quaint (b) elite (c) abhorrent (d) dire
8. Which word or words go with *language*?
 (a) advocate (b) dialect (c) translate (d) reprisal
9. Which word or words go with *shocking*?
 (a) monstrous (b) copious (c) atrocious (d) elite
10. Which word or words go with *misery*?
 (a) torment (b) method (c) enhance (d) anguish

| |
|-------------|
| abject |
| advocate |
| atrocious |
| commemorate |
| dialect |
| dire |
| elite |
| enhance |
| flagrant |
| languish |
| mute |
| raze |
| reprisal |
| turmoil |
| wreak |

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Reprisals

- (a) by the military took various forms.
- (b) fell thick and fast on the field, icy cold and blazing white.
- (c) were sent into the yard to play with each other.
- (d) were distributed to the guilty students.

2. A **flagrant**

- (a) smell of smoke greeted Caleb as he stepped outside the cabin.
- (b) breach of the law will be punished.
- (c) smile from his mom let him know everything was all right.
- (d) display of bad manners will get you in trouble.

3. A **dire**

- (a) amount of money was raised to support the local hospital.
- (b) smell told us the meal was ready.
- (c) warning requested that everyone lock their doors.
- (d) forecast says a hurricane is on its way.

4. The **dialect**

- (a) of the people in northern Spain is spoken by over a million people.
- (b) between the two debaters lightened when they began to banter.
- (c) should be turned until the arrow points to the zero.
- (d) known as Creole takes dozens of different forms.

5. The **commemoration**

- (a) of lines can be difficult for the lead role in a play.
- (b) will be on Veterans Day at the statehouse.
- (c) of the women who fought for equal rights is on Saturday.
- (d) between the dolphins was amazing to hear.

6. The **atrocities**

- (a) were committed by both sides in the war.
- (b) ordered by the president will always be remembered with regret.
- (c) of the future will bring us technology we can't even imagine.
- (d) of the game were explained to both sides before kickoff.

7. An **advocate**

- (a) for the homeless suggested renovating abandoned houses.
- (b) can be grown in any large pot.
- (c) for the students was chosen to represent them.
- (d) on the playground is the best in town.

8. **Abject**

- (a) fear during the movie caused me to cover my eyes.
- (b) sadness is unavoidable at some point in life.
- (c) happiness filled his heart as he stepped outside.
- (d) misery was felt by the family members at the funeral.



Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. An example of a **dire** warning about the weather is:

_____ .

2. I would like to be an **advocate** for

_____ .

3. An **elite** group is one that

_____ .

4. I would feel **abject** terror if I saw

_____ .

5. I can **enhance** my health by

_____ .

6. A **flagrant** action might be

_____ .

7. If you **languish** over something bad, that means you

_____ .

8. Something that might lead to **turmoil** in school is

_____ .

9. A **reprisal** is

_____ .

10. The opposite of **atrocious** is

_____ .

| |
|-------------|
| abject |
| advocate |
| atrocious |
| commemorate |
| dialect |
| dire |
| elite |
| enhance |
| flagrant |
| languish |
| mute |
| raze |
| reprisal |
| turmoil |
| wreak |



Rigoberta Menchu

The four-hundredth anniversary of Columbus's famous voyage was **commemorated** in 1892 with much fanfare throughout North and South America. The five-hundredth-anniversary celebrations, in 1992, were **muted** by comparison. Instead of celebrating, many people drew attention to how thoroughly the European settlers had **wreaked** devastation upon the original inhabitants of the Americas. In that year, too, the Nobel Committee awarded its Peace Prize to Rigoberta Menchu, a thirty-three-year-old native woman from Guatemala. She was honored for her "increasingly prominent part as an **advocate** of native rights."

Until Menchu was sixteen, she spoke only Quiche, one of some twenty **dialects** of the Guatemalan native peoples. The Quiche are the descendants of the once-proud Mayas. Mayan civilization flourished in Central America until about 900. Menchu came to prominence in 1983 with the publication in Spanish of her autobiography *I, Rigoberta Menchu*. The book gives an account of the **atrocities** committed by government forces from the 1960s up to the 1980s against the peasant population of Guatemala.

While the country's **elite** lived in heavily guarded, luxurious homes in Guatemala City, the native peoples lived in **abject** poverty. Natives made up more than half of the population. Their little plots of land, which provided only a meager living, could be seized without warning by wealthy landowners. To protest was to risk severe punishment by the army. An entire village could be **razed** and its inhabitants slaughtered. During the thirty-year conflict, an estimated one hundred thousand unarmed native peasants were killed; tens of thousands fled the **turmoil** in the countryside for the safety of neighboring Mexico. There they **languished** for many years in refugee camps. Others escaped to the mountains to wage a decades-long civil war against the army.

Menchu's own family experienced terrible losses for resisting the army's rigid control of the country. Her father was repeatedly beaten and jailed for organizing nonviolent protests. In 1980, he was part of a group that occupied the Spanish embassy in Guatemala City. The goal was to draw attention to the government's **flagrant** abuses of human rights. During this occupation, the building was set on fire, killing those trapped inside. Later, Menchu's sixteen-year-old brother, along with twenty others, were abducted and killed by the

military. A year later her mother was abducted by army officers and killed. Her body was left unburied as a **dire** warning to other “troublemakers.”

Two of Menchu’s sisters joined the armed resistance groups fighting within the country. She herself escaped to Mexico in 1981. From there she worked to draw the world’s attention to the plight of her people. The awarding of the Nobel Peace Prize **enhanced** enormously her ability to tell her story, both within Guatemala and in the world at large. She used the \$1.2 million prize money to further her campaign for peace in Guatemala and the rights of native peoples throughout the hemisphere. There was one further benefit of winning the prize: As a world-famous figure, she was free to visit her native land without fear of **reprisal** by government forces.

The thirty years of civil war ended in 1996 with the signing of peace accords between the rebels and the government. However, progress toward the goals outlined in the accords was painfully slow; a great deal of mistrust still existed between the two sides. In February 2004, President Oscar Berger appointed what he called “a goodwill ambassador” to speed up the process. The person he named to the post was Rigoberta Menchu.

She has tried to further her aims by being politically active. In 2011 she ran in the Guatemalan presidential election and won over 150,000 votes, finishing sixth out of ten candidates. Her work continues through the Rigoberta Menchu Foundation. The mission of the foundation is to seek world peace by pursuing justice and equality, especially for native peoples. Among its many specific goals are the improvement of education and access to information technology within native communities.

| |
|-------------|
| abject |
| advocate |
| atrocious |
| commemorate |
| dialect |
| dire |
| elite |
| enhance |
| flagrant |
| languish |
| mute |
| raze |
| reprisal |
| turmoil |
| wreak |

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. How do you know that Menchu’s father did not **advocate** violence?

2. How might language have affected the ability of the native peoples of Guatemala to form a united opposition to the army?

3. What **reprisal** did government forces make for the occupation of the Spanish embassy?

4. What **atrocities** was Menchu's father subjected to?

5. What were the **dire** consequences for Menchu's family after the Spanish embassy burned?

6. What event will be **commemorated** in 2092?

7. Why would it be inaccurate to describe Rigoberta Menchu as **mute** about the suffering of the Guatemalan people?

8. Do you think Menchu's family was part of the country's **elite**? Explain.

9. What is the meaning of **abject** as it is used in the passage?

10. Give one example from the passage of a **flagrant** abuse of human rights by the Guatemalan military.

11. What does the passage say tens of thousands of Guatemalans did during the thirty-year conflict?

12. How do you know that the lives of the Guatemalans who fled to Mexico did not improve much?

13. How do you think Rigoberta Menchu's autobiography **enhanced** people's knowledge of what was happening in Guatemala?

14. What is the meaning of **wreaked** as it is used in the passage?

15. During the war, why were many Guatemalan peasants left homeless?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

- The Latin prefix *ab-*, "from" or "away," combines with the root from the Latin verb *jacere*, "to throw," to form the adjective **abject**. Its original meaning is "cast out" or "rejected." It now means "wretched" or "in a low state."
- The Latin *flagrare* means "to burn" and forms the root of the adjective **flagrant**. The original meaning of this word was "flaming" or "blazing," which changed over time to "out-rageous" or "conspicuously bad." A blazing fire is certainly conspicuous, and perhaps it is this connection that led to the change in meaning.
- One of the meanings of *raise* is "to build." It is curious then that **raze**, a word with the same pronunciation, has just the opposite meaning, "to destroy completely." (While it can take a team of workers several days to *raise* a barn, a tornado can *raze* it in a matter of minutes.)

| |
|-------------|
| abject |
| advocate |
| atrocious |
| commemorate |
| dialect |
| dire |
| elite |
| enhance |
| flagrant |
| languish |
| mute |
| raze |
| reprisal |
| turmoil |
| wreak |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

augment

ôg ment´

v. To increase in size, amount, or degree.

In order to buy a new bike before summer, Iris **augmented** her savings by babysitting the twins next door.

benign

bi nin´

adj. 1. Kind; gracious; gentle.

Friendly nurses were a **benign** presence in the hospital.

2. Favorable; not threatening.

Although the weather had been **benign** in the morning when Juan and Ana started out on their bikes, by noon the sky was dark, and they heard thunder in the distance.



.....
Say something benign to your partner.

connoisseur

kän ə sūr´

n. A person with extensive knowledge, especially of the fine arts; a person of refined taste.

A **connoisseur** of rare stamps would recognize the famous English “penny black” at once.



.....
Share with your partner something you would like to be a connoisseur of, such as rare coins or first-edition comic books.

discern

di sɜrn´

v. 1. To detect with the eyes.

About forty-five minutes after the ferry left Block Island, the passengers could **discern** the coast of Rhode Island before them.

2. To understand or comprehend.

Not until she finished the novel did Janice **discern** the significance of the title.

3. To recognize as separate or different.

Unfortunately for Laura, her teacher was able to **discern** Laura’s handwriting from her mother’s handwriting.

discerning adj. Having good judgment; perceptive.

The coach’s **discerning** comments about Rudi’s jump shot helped him improve his game.



.....
Using a piece of scrap paper, draw a house. Then discern the differences between your drawing and your partner’s drawing.

embellish
em bel' ish

v. 1. To make beautiful by adding decorative elements.
The entire surface of the black cloth had been **embellished** with colored threads stitched in elaborate patterns.

2. To add fictitious details to.
Mark Twain often **embellished** his stories to make them more interesting.



.....
Tell your partner what is happening in class right now, but embellish the story with some unbelievable details.

execute
ek' sə kyōt

v. 1. To carry out; to perform.
The karate instructor told me to **execute** a front snap kick.

2. To create, as a work of art.
The sculptor Maya Lin often uses unusual materials, such as pieces of wood or shards of glass, to **execute** her pieces.

3. To put to death as a legal penalty.
Executing criminals condemned to death is a controversial practice.



.....
Talk to your partner about a plan you executed that did not go well.

exemplify
ek zem' pli fi

v. To illustrate by being an example of.
The poetry of Langston Hughes **exemplifies** some of the best work of the writers of the Harlem Renaissance.

grotesque
grō tesk'

adj. So distorted or strange as to appear bizarre or comical.
The **grotesque** masks worn by the dancers frightened the children.

hallowed
hal' ōd

adj. Greatly respected; holy; sacred.
Arlington National Cemetery is **hallowed** ground because it is the burial place for soldiers who have died in war.

impersonate
im pər' sə nāt

v. 1. To assume the character or appearance of.
The solution to the mystery became clear to the detective when he learned that one woman had **impersonated** another when renting the apartment.

2. To mimic.
I tried to **impersonate** my mother when I answered the phone.

malevolent
mə lev' ə lənt

adj. Showing ill will or hatred; producing harm or evil.
The bully's **malevolent** plan was to frighten the younger students on the bus so they would give him their lunch money.

malevolence *n.* A feeling or expression of ill will.
The look of **malevolence** in his eyes sent shudders down our spines.



.....
Give your partner a look of malevolence.

ornate
ôr nāt´

adj. Heavily and elaborately decorated.
The tour guide pointed out the **ornate** carving over the arched doorway.

pastoral
pas´ tər əl

adj. 1. Having to do with shepherds and herders.
The Industrial Revolution contributed to the disappearance of a **pastoral** way of life.
2. Relating to country life, and often presented as charmingly simple.
Some of my sister’s college friends plan to move together to a **pastoral** place where they will herd goats and grow their own vegetables.

precarious
prē kar´ ē əs

adj. Not safe or secure; dangerously uncertain.
Having cut through the thick vines to get a better view of the waterfall, the hikers did not understand how **precarious** their situation was until they tried to return to the trail and could not find it.



.....
Tell your partner about a precarious situation you once found yourself in.

renown
rē noun´

n. Fame; honor.
By 1964, the Beatles had achieved worldwide **renown** for their rock-and-roll music.
renowned *adj.* Famous; honored.
Isabelle Allende is a **renowned** writer, lecturer, translator, and journalist who has lived in many places around the world.

11A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 11. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) one that is friendly or kind. (c) A benign expression is
(b) A grotesque expression is (d) one that is meant to deceive.

2. (a) add decoration to it. (c) take care of it.
(b) To embellish something is to (d) To discern something is to

3. (a) one that is nonexistent. (c) A hallowed location is
(b) one that is insecure. (d) A precarious location is
-
-

4. (a) To exemplify something is to (c) To impersonate something is to
(b) be a good example of it. (d) be frustrated by it.
-
-

5. (a) To augment something (c) To discern something
(b) is to be unaware of it. (d) is to notice it.
-
-

6. (a) that has some practical use. (c) A hallowed object is one
(b) that is regarded as sacred. (d) An ornate object is one
-
-

7. (a) Renown is (c) a show of understanding.
(b) Malevolence is (d) a feeling of intense ill will.
-
-

8. (a) that is made of precious metal. (c) that is heavily decorated.
(b) An ornate object is one (d) A grotesque object is one
-
-

9. (a) To impersonate someone (c) is to show admiration for that person.
(b) is to put that person to death. (d) To execute someone
-
-

10. (a) is one that is famous. (c) A pastoral novel
(b) A renowned novel (d) is one whose author is unknown.
-
-

11B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. The singer's **world-wide reputation** made him easily recognizable.
2. Mirta **increased the size of** her wardrobe by making several dresses during summer vacation.
3. At the costume shop, we found just the mask we wanted—one with **horribly distorted** features and green hair.
4. Even critics who were **able to perceive small differences** could not tell that the painting was a fake.
5. It is a crime to **dress up as and pretend to be** a police officer.
6. The museum director is a **person who is both knowledgeable about and has a love** of modern art.
7. The arch **is a good example of what is distinctive about** Roman architecture.
8. Simone **added a few untrue details to** her account of the dog's rescue, suggesting that her own role had been crucial.
9. Even though the sculptor **created according to his artistic vision** hundreds of sculptures, he never felt they fully expressed what he meant.
10. The student play alternates scenes in a **simple and unaffected country** setting with those in the splendid palace of the king.

augment

benign

connoisseur

discern

embellish

execute

exemplify

grotesque

hallowed

impersonate

malevolent

ornate

pastoral

precarious

renown

11c

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which of the following might be present in a **pastoral** scene?
(a) a shepherd (c) a stream
(b) a meadow (d) a skyscraper
- Which of the following can be **ornate**?
(a) a design (c) an ordeal
(b) a brooch (d) an inkling
- Which of the following can be **discerned**?
(a) a slight crack (c) a slight difference
(b) a slight movement (d) a meaning
- Which of the following can be **executed**?
(a) a portrait (c) a dance step
(b) a person (d) an order
- Which of the following can be **malevolent**?
(a) an odor (c) a grin
(b) a pseudonym (d) a person
- Which of the following can be **impersonated**?
(a) a friend's grades (c) a friend's bicycle
(b) a friend's brother (d) a friend's walk
- Which of the following can be **hallowed**?
(a) a person's name (c) a battlefield
(b) a place of worship (d) a person's memory
- Which of the following can be **benign**?
(a) an expression (c) a cell phone
(b) a tirade (d) a climate

11D

Word Study: Synonyms and Antonyms

Each group of four words contains either two synonyms or two antonyms. Circle that pair. Then circle the S if they are synonyms or the A if they are antonyms.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|----------|--------------|-------------|---|---|
| 1. secure | benign | precarious | agile | S | A |
| 2. turmoil | banter | audacity | tumult | S | A |
| 3. intricate | unseemly | appropriate | mild | S | A |
| 4. humdrum | inane | electrifying | offensive | S | A |
| 5. kind | ornate | benevolent | bizarre | S | A |
| 6. languish | simplify | impersonate | embellish | S | A |
| 7. avid | agile | intricate | complicated | S | A |
| 8. foolish | balmy | turbulent | gruesome | S | A |
| 9. atrocious | fitful | commendable | crucial | S | A |
| 10. slovenly | audible | fastidious | copious | S | A |

| |
|-------------|
| augment |
| benign |
| connoisseur |
| discern |
| embellish |
| execute |
| exemplify |
| grotesque |
| hallowed |
| impersonate |
| malevolent |
| ornate |
| pastoral |
| precarious |
| renown |



The Kachina Dolls of Oraibi

The village of Oraibi lies in the middle of the four-thousand-square-mile Hopi Reservation in the northeast corner of Arizona. It is believed to be the oldest continuously inhabited village in North America. Oraibi was first settled nearly a thousand years ago by the Anasazi, a **pastoral** people, who excelled in the creation of beautiful objects.

The descendants of the Anasazi, the Hopi people, now inhabit the area and continue the tradition of making fine pottery, woven rugs, and baskets. But Hopi artistry is best **exemplified** by the unique form of carved wooden figures known as kachinas. These figures are sculpted from the root of the cottonwood tree and range in size from a few inches up to two feet. The heads often have **ornately** carved masks. The finished figures are painted in bright colors and **embellished** with shells, feathers, and semiprecious stones.

The kachina carvings are representations of the Hopi spirit world. In the Hopi view, everything in the world is inhabited by a spirit; when people succeed in living in harmony and balance with the spirits, the world will be at peace. The carvings represent the spirits of **hallowed** figures from Hopi history as well as of plants and animals, the sun, the moon, and the stars.

From late December to late July, the spirits are believed to be on Earth. During this time, the Hopi perform ceremonies in their villages. Masked and costumed dancers **impersonate** the spirits in celebrations held in their honor. Some of the dancers represent **benign**, gift-bearing kachinas who present children with carved dolls. These are not toys, for they have a religious and social significance. But neither are they worshiped as idols. They are hung on the walls of Hopi homes, and by learning what each kachina doll stands for, the children **discern** the history, codes of behavior, and religion of their people. Along with the gift-bearing kachinas, there are also representations of **malevolent** spirits who dance through the village streets. Supposedly, they are searching for those in the community who have been disobedient. These demon kachinas are often **grotesque** in appearance, frightening to those who see them approaching.

Until the late nineteenth century, outside visitors were rare in Hopi villages; their inhabitants did not encourage such visits, and the paths leading to the high, flat hilltops were very **precarious**. But once roads were built,

access to the heights was easy; soon, tourists began to outnumber the residents. They came to watch the religious ceremonies held in the spring and summer. As mementos, they purchased kachina dolls. Hopi carvers, who once had made these dolls only for use in their own communities, stepped up production to meet the demand.

Gradually, the kachinas began to change. Tourists wanted larger carvings and figures showing action. The size of a kachina was **augmented** by the addition of other carved pieces attached by glue; and because many Hopi were opposed to the sale of their religious objects to outsiders, the figures were **executed** so that they differed from those used in Hopi ceremonies.

Today, many Hopi carvers continue the ancient tradition, using the same simple materials and tools of earlier generations. Collectors of Native American art purchase kachina dolls directly from these carvers or from gift shops that feature their work. Some carvers have achieved world **renown**; their work commands prices in the thousands of dollars.

Connoisseurs of Hopi carving who travel to Oklahoma City will find over sixty kachina dolls on permanent display at the National Cowboy Hall of Fame. In Phoenix, Arizona, the place to visit is the Heard Museum. It is famous for its collection of over four hundred dolls, many of them presented to the museum by Arizona's then-senator Barry Goldwater.

► **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. How do you know that Hopi dancers are not considered to be actual kachina spirits?

2. What is the purpose of the **malevolent** kachina dancers?

3. Before the end of the last century, why didn't many tourists visit the Hopi?

| |
|-------------|
| augment |
| benign |
| connoisseur |
| discern |
| embellish |
| execute |
| exemplify |
| grotesque |
| hallowed |
| impersonate |
| malevolent |
| ornate |
| pastoral |
| precarious |
| renown |

4. What detail tells you that the carvers spend a lot of time working on the heads of the dolls?

5. Why would it be inaccurate to say that the kachina dolls are very simple in style?

6. What is the meaning of **benign** as it is used in the passage?

7. How can people tell the difference between the demon kachina dancers and the gift-bearing kachina dancers?

8. Why have some Hopi opposed selling kachinas to outsiders?

9. How do you know that the ancestors of the Hopi raised sheep or goats?

10. What do the kachina carvings **exemplify**?

11. What is the meaning of **executed** as it is used in the passage?

12. What important role do kachina dolls play in the education of Hopi children?

13. Why is it likely that Barry Goldwater could have told you a lot about kachina carvings?

14. What change was made in the kachinas carved for outsiders?

15. Why do people visit the Hopi?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

-
- The adjective **benign** is formed from the Latin *bene*, which means “well” or “good.” The antonym of this word is *malignant*, formed from the Latin *mal*, which means “bad” or “evil.”

A person seeing a doctor about a growth or tumor would be relieved to learn that it was *benign*; this would mean that it was harmless. The person would be very concerned if told the growth was *malignant*, for that would mean it was cancerous.

-
- **Malevolent** is another word formed from the Latin *mal*. It is similar in meaning to *malicious*, but *malevolent* is a much stronger term. A *malicious* remark may hurt the person it is directed at, but could be simply

mischievous, whereas a *malevolent* remark suggests strong hatred on the part of the person making it.

-
- *Pastor* is another name for *minister* in many churches; the English word comes from the Latin *pastor*, “a shepherd.” The minister or *pastor* is looked upon by the congregation as a shepherd to his or her flock. The adjective formed from *pastor* is **pastoral**, which means “of or relating to country life, especially as it relates to the lives of shepherds and shepherdesses.” *Pastoral* scenes have long been a favorite of painters because the subject suggests a peaceful and simple way of life. A *pastoral* is a poem or other literary or artistic work dealing with the quiet life of the country.

| |
|-------------|
| augment |
| benign |
| connoisseur |
| discern |
| embellish |
| execute |
| exemplify |
| grotesque |
| hallowed |
| impersonate |
| malevolent |
| ornate |
| pastoral |
| precarious |
| renown |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

accede

ak sēd'

v. To agree to; to consent to, often after urging from another.

Nasri **acceded** to the wishes of his classmates and stopped tapping his fingers on the table during study hall.



.....
Convince your partner to accede to your wish to stand up for a minute.

affluent

af' lōō ənt

adj. Generously supplied with money or possessions; wealthy.

Although Cicely was not from an **affluent** family, she could attend an expensive school because of the scholarship she had won.

affluence n. Wealth.

Mrs. Winn's **affluence** is due to oil being discovered on her land.



.....
Talk with your partner about how you would handle sudden affluence if you won the lottery.

arbitrary

är' bi trēr ē

adj. Determined by chance or whim rather than by reason or necessity.

Even though our choice of restaurant was **arbitrary**, the food was delicious.

artisan

ärt' ə zən

n. One able to do skilled work with the hands; a craftsperson.

Artisans working with leather, yarn, and clay displayed their products at the local crafts fair.

dismantle

dis mant' l

v. To take apart.

Wong helped Matt **dismantle** the engine so they could begin work on the repair.

immerse

i mɜrs'

v. 1. To cover with liquid.

To prepare the salad, Eva first blanched the vegetables by **immersing** them in boiling water.

2. To completely engage the attention of.

Sophie, **immersed** in her book, did not notice when Jay boarded the bus and sat down beside her.



.....
Discuss with your partner a time when you were so immersed in something that you did not notice anything else.

irksome

ɪrk' səm

adj. Annoying; tedious.

All the steps preliminary to painting the ceiling—scraping, patching, and sanding—were **irksome** to Nevaeh, who wanted to finish the job quickly.

legacy
leg' ə sē

n. 1. Money or property left to another in a will.
This silver pocket watch is my **legacy** from Grandfather Gomez.
2. Something passed on to those who come after.
Catholicism and the Spanish language are **legacies** of Spanish rule in Guatemala.

ostentatious
əs tən tə' shəs

adj. Extravagantly showy or ornate.
My grandmother favors **ostentatious** furnishings, but my dad prefers simple furniture and decorations.

panorama
pan ə ram' ə

n. 1. A complete view of a surrounding area.
We took the elevator up to the observation deck so we could view the **panorama** of New York City and all its suburbs.
2. A thorough presentation of a subject.
One course my aunt teaches at the university is a **panorama** of civil-rights law in the United States.



.....
Explain to your partner why you would or would not be interested in a panorama of algebra.

philanthropy
fi lan' thrə pē

n. The attempt to improve the well-being of those in need by donating money or aid.
The **philanthropy** of the Tan family has provided the money for this cancer research center.

philanthropist *n.* One who makes substantial contributions to those in need.
Andrew Carnegie, a renowned **philanthropist**, established many public libraries in the early 1900s.



.....
Tell your partner what kind of philanthropy you would like to be involved in.

prestige
pres tēzh'

n. High standing; respect earned by accomplishments.
Winning the Nobel Prize brings much **prestige**.
prestigious *adj.* (pres teej' əs) Honored; esteemed.
An Oscar is the most **prestigious** award in the movie industry.

prolific
prō lif' ik

adj. Abundantly productive.
Although Maya Angelou was a **prolific** poet, she is known primarily for her series of autobiographies.



.....
Share with your partner a topic you have prolific thoughts about.

reticent
ret' ə sənt

adj. Inclined to keep one's thoughts and feelings to oneself; quiet and reserved.
When we asked her about her parents, Adriana grew **reticent**.

reticence *n.* Silence or reserve.

Liao's **reticence** about his plans for the summer made us even more curious.



.....
Have your partner ask you a question, and then be reticent in your answer.

tycoon
ti koon'

n. A wealthy and powerful businessperson.

Sam Walton, the business **tycoon** who founded Walmart, worked at many different jobs while he was in school, including milking cows and waiting tables.

12A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in bold is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

- (a) An enormous iceberg **immersed** with the *Titanic*. ____
(b) I **immersed** my swollen ankle in ice water for ten minutes. ____
(c) A great actor **immerses** herself in the role and becomes that person. ____
(d) Abraham Lincoln was **immersed** in the enormous task of winning the war. ____
- (a) The **tycoon** has become one of the wealthiest women in the country. ____
(b) The **tycoon** hit the coast with high winds and flooding. ____
(c) The digital age has created many **tycoons** who run powerful businesses. ____
(d) A **tycoon** rummaged through the trash and then disappeared into the night. ____
- (a) Father **acceded** to my request for an increase in my allowance. ____
(b) She **acceded** to her friends' encouragement that she run for student-council president. ____
(c) Does his age **accede** the limit? ____
(d) After lunch, we **accede** to study hall. ____
- (a) Mr. Cisco grows **prolific** whenever he thinks about life in the old country. ____
(b) He is a **prolific** author of horror stories. ____
(c) Before computers, most people were **prolific** letter writers. ____
(d) The South Pacific is **prolific** with humpback whales. ____

accede

affluent

arbitrary

artisan

dismantle

immerse

irksome

legacy

ostentatious

panorama

philanthropy

prestige

prolific

reticent

tycoon

5. (a) Food soon becomes **reticent** if it is not stored in a cool place. ____
(b) Milla has always been **reticent** around people she's just met. ____
(c) I was too **reticent** to say anything about the mistake. ____
(d) The Olympian was the **reticence** of the Bronze Medal. ____
6. (a) Her family was **affluent** for years until they lost their savings. ____
(b) Private jets and large yachts are flagrant symbols of **affluence**. ____
(c) After three months in Mexico, Jo was **affluent** in Spanish. ____
(d) My mom says my new friend is a bad **affluence**. ____
7. (a) The Medal of Honor is the United States's most **prestigious** award. ____
(b) Winning Olympic medals brings **prestige** to small countries. ____
(c) Hiring the well-known teacher helped restore **prestige** to the school. ____
(d) The most **prestigious** depth yet measured is 36,200 feet. ____
8. (a) The treasure remained **ostentatious** until its discovery in 1920. ____
(b) Olivia wore **ostentatious** earrings because she loved to make a statement. ____
(c) The luxury apartment was an **ostentatious** place to live. ____
(d) In the animal kingdom, the prize for "most **ostentatious**" goes to the peacock with its colorful plumage. ____
9. (a) I always seem to be assigned the most **irksome** tasks at school. ____
(b) Lopez gave an **irksome** wink to show he was in on the joke. ____
(c) It was so **irksome** to have to stand there and do nothing. ____
(d) I had so much **irksome** fun volunteering at the zoo. ____
10. (a) Who the coach chooses to clean the locker room is completely **arbitrary**. ____
(b) Jaymes has always wanted to be an **arbitrary** surgeon. ____
(c) A coin toss is an **arbitrary** method of deciding something. ____
(d) What we eat tonight is **arbitrary** because I'm so hungry I will eat anything. ____

12B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *giving*?
 (a) benefactor (b) threadbare (c) philanthropy (d) panorama
2. Which word or words go with *complete view*?
 (a) diversity (b) typical (c) panorama (d) tycoon
3. Which word or words go with *demolish*?
 (a) immerse (b) raze (c) dismantle (d) accede
4. Which word or words go with *work*?
 (a) panorama (b) artisan (c) legacy (d) vocation
5. Which word or words go with *agree*?
 (a) concur (b) accede (c) dismantle (d) enhance
6. Which word or words go with *wealthy*?
 (a) irksome (b) arbitrary (c) affluent (d) prosperous
7. Which word or words go with *unpleasant*?
 (a) tedious (b) monotonous (c) irksome (d) prolific
8. Which word or words go with *showy*?
 (a) affluent (b) reticent (c) ornate (d) ostentatious
9. Which word or words go with *productive*?
 (a) ornate (b) dismantle (c) prolific (d) prestigious
10. Which word or words go with *money*?
 (a) legacy (b) panorama (c) bankrupt (d) tycoon

| |
|--------------|
| accede |
| affluent |
| arbitrary |
| artisan |
| dismantle |
| immerse |
| irksome |
| legacy |
| ostentatious |
| panorama |
| philanthropy |
| prestige |
| prolific |
| reticent |
| tycoon |

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. **Philanthropists**

- (a) use their money to improve the world.
- (b) may employ experts to tell them where to spend their money.
- (c) were first discovered in Africa a hundred thousand years ago.
- (d) will bid hundreds of thousands of dollars for a rare postage stamp.

2. The **panorama**

- (a) view from the window showed the entire beach at sunset.
- (b) photograph included most of Manhattan's skyscrapers.
- (c) of troubles that seemed to follow Alyssa were irritating.
- (d) of American literature is the subject of today's lecture.

3. A **legacy**

- (a) carries a hundred-dollar fine.
- (b) from an aunt enabled Ameira to go to college.
- (c) involving property should be looked over by a lawyer.
- (d) of debt was passed from one president to the next.

4. I was **immersed**

- (a) in my book when the doorbell rang.
- (b) by a horde of fans, yelling and screaming.
- (c) to hear that my best friend was valedictorian.
- (d) in learning my lines for the school play and didn't hear the telephone.

5. I **dismantled**

- (a) from the horse and walked around to rub his nose.
- (b) toward the bus but was too late.
- (c) the bike for repairs later and put the pieces in the garage.
- (d) the tree house and used the wood to help my dad build a doghouse.

6. **Artisans**

- (a) were a form of money in Polynesian societies.
- (b) such as basket weavers and painters meet every Thursday.
- (c) hang on the walls of the cafeteria at school.
- (d) sell their products at the weekly farmers' market.

7. **Arbitrary**

- (a) to what I was told, there are no leprechauns in Ireland.
- (b) rules aren't very effective.
- (c) choices are usually made without considering all the details.
- (d) creatures live in trees and use their tail as a fifth limb.

8. **Affluent**

- (a) meals are mostly made of bread, water, and potatoes.
- (b) families in this neighborhood are very generous to others.
- (c) in six languages, Tina was also a chess grandmaster.
- (d) mice have made their home in the attic.



Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. Our **legacy** to the next generation should be

_____ .

2. I can be **reticent** when

_____ .

3. I find it **irksome** when

_____ .

4. It would be **ostentatious** to

_____ .

5. A **philanthropist** is someone who

_____ .

6. A person I know who deserves **prestige** is

_____ .

7. A subject I would like to **immerse** myself in is

_____ .

8. If you **accede** to something, that means

_____ .

9. If a rule is **arbitrary**, it is

_____ .

10. A **tycoon** has

_____ .

| |
|--------------|
| accede |
| affluent |
| arbitrary |
| artisan |
| dismantle |
| immerse |
| irksome |
| legacy |
| ostentatious |
| panorama |
| philanthropy |
| prestige |
| prolific |
| reticent |
| tycoon |



Hearst Castle's Master Builder

As part of the tour of Hearst Castle, also known as San Simeon, in southern California, visitors get to see home movies. These films show many of the celebrities who were guests there during the 1930s and 1940s. In one film, a tiny, bespectacled woman hiding her face behind a sheaf of papers is mistakenly identified by the narrator as William Randolph Hearst's secretary. In fact, she was Julia Morgan, the architect who designed and supervised the building of the castle, which some have described as the most **ostentatious** residence of the twentieth century.

There is an explanation for the error. Julia Morgan, despite being an extremely **prolific** architect, with over seven hundred buildings to her credit, was a very **reticent** person; she actively avoided publicity for herself. From early in her career, she rarely gave interviews. When she retired at the age of seventy-nine, she had all her architectural drawings destroyed. She declared that the buildings themselves would be her **legacy**. As a result, very little was written about her for many years.

Julia Morgan was born into an **affluent** San Francisco family in 1872. At that time, it was not common for young women to attend college. Despite this fact, Morgan entered the engineering school at the University of California at Berkeley. After graduation, she became the first woman admitted as an architectural student to the **prestigious** École des Beaux Arts in Paris, France. When her studies were completed, she returned to California, ready to open her own firm. First, however, she had to pass the state licensing exam. In 1904, she became the first woman to receive an architectural license to practice in that state.

Morgan had great skill in understanding her clients' wishes and in carrying them out successfully. She designed and built private homes as well as public buildings. One of her clients was Mrs. Phoebe Hearst, a wealthy widow and **philanthropist**. Her only child was the publishing **tycoon** William Randolph Hearst. When Mrs. Hearst died in 1919, her son inherited her enormous fortune. To match his great wealth, Hearst had extravagant plans: He would have a huge home built on his 275,000-acre ranch, midway between San Francisco and Los Angeles. For this project, he hired Julia Morgan.

For the next twenty years, Morgan **immersed** herself in every aspect of the design and construction of the main house and three guest houses. Early in the project she supervised the laying of five miles of road to provide access to the site. She also arranged for a dock to be built to receive building materials arriving by ship. As the buildings were completed, she brought skilled **artisans** from Europe to execute the wood and stone carvings that embellish many of the rooms.

From the beginning, Hearst was actively involved in the building of “the ranch,” as he called it. At times, this must have been **irksome**; for example, after an elaborate fireplace was completed, it had to be **dismantled** and moved to a different place in the same room because Hearst was dissatisfied with its location. Morgan had no choice but to **accede** to Hearst’s wishes when he **arbitrarily** changed his mind, as he frequently did.

The scope of the project provided Morgan with a unique challenge as an architect. Casa Grande, the main house, contains 115 rooms, filled with art treasures collected in Europe. Its twin towers, 137 feet high, offer a fine **panorama** of the Pacific Ocean and the Santa Lucia mountains. The outdoor Neptune pool, lined with green and white marble, is not only breathtakingly beautiful but also soundly constructed on its hillside site. In addition to the buildings, Morgan directed the creation of numerous gardens and a private zoo that grew to include more than 100 species.

By the late 1930s, construction at San Simeon ceased. Morgan continued to work on other projects for Hearst as well as for other clients until 1951, when she retired. In 1958, San Simeon became one of California’s state historical monuments. With over one million visitors a year, it is now one of the nation’s most popular tourist attractions. Everyone knows that it was Hearst’s millions that paid for it, but very few know the name of the person who designed and supervised its building. And that is the way Julia Morgan would have wanted it.

| |
|--------------|
| accede |
| affluent |
| arbitrary |
| artisan |
| dismantle |
| immerse |
| irksome |
| legacy |
| ostentatious |
| panorama |
| philanthropy |
| prestige |
| prolific |
| reticent |
| tycoon |

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. Give some details of the San Simeon project that show that William Randolph Hearst was an **affluent** man.

2. What has been the result of Julia Morgan's **reticence**?

3. Why do you think Morgan brought **artisans** from Europe to do the carvings?

4. How do you know that Hearst was successful with his business?

5. How do you know that Morgan did not find Hearst too **irksome** to work with?

6. Why might fireplaces have to be **dismantled** before being moved?

7. Which details in the passage suggest that Hearst's taste was rather **ostentatious**?

8. Was Hearst Castle Morgan's only project? Explain.

9. Why would Morgan have to **accede** to Hearst's decisions about the castle?

10. Why must Hearst's frequent changes have been hard to accept?

11. Why do you think Morgan included towers as part of the design of the main house?

12. What is the meaning of **immersed** as it is used in the passage?

13. Why would it be inaccurate to describe San Simeon as a **philanthropic** project?

14. What is the meaning of **legacy** as it is used in the passage?

15. Which details in the passage suggest that Morgan deserves a position of **prestige** among American architects?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- Commodore Matthew C. Perry's visit to Japan in 1854 opened that country for the first time to trade with the United States. It also added a new word to the English language. Perry negotiated with a Japanese official, whose title was *taikun*. This was formed from two Chinese words, *ta*, "great," and *kiun*, "prince." Perry introduced the word on his return to the United States, and it caught on. The spelling became modified to **tycoon**. During Abraham Lincoln's presidency, members of his cabinet affectionately referred to him by that term, *tycoon*.

Another English word of Chinese origin is *typhoon*, a wind of hurricane force in the western Pacific, formed from *ta*, "great," and *feng*, "wind."

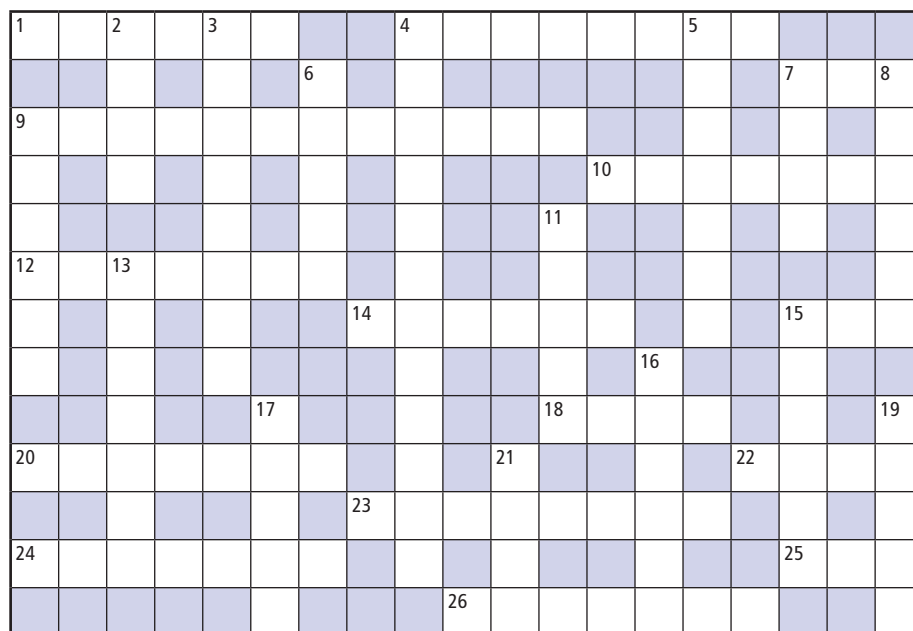
.....

- The Greek verb *philein*, "to love," combines with the Greek *anthropos*, "humankind," to form **philanthropist**. Other words formed from *philein* include *bibliophile*, "a person who loves and collects books"; *Anglophile*, "a person who loves England and the English"; *Francophile*, "a person who loves France and the French"; *philosophy*, "the love of and seeking after wisdom"; and *philology*, "the love of words and language."

| |
|--------------|
| accede |
| affluent |
| arbitrary |
| artisan |
| dismantle |
| immerse |
| irksome |
| legacy |
| ostentatious |
| panorama |
| philanthropy |
| prestige |
| prolific |
| reticent |
| tycoon |

Review

Crossword Puzzle Solve the crossword puzzle by studying the clues and filling in the answer boxes. The number after a clue is the lesson the word is from.



Clues Across

1. Up roar or disturbance (9)
4. Abundantly productive (12)
7. We breathe it
9. Extravagantly showy (12)
10. To detect with the eyes (11)
12. Quickness of mind or body (9)
14. A food such as sugar or flour (9)
15. Two times five
18. An oak, for example
20. A state of confusion (10)
22. It comes from a sheep.
23. Happening irregularly (9)
24. To carry out or perform (11)
25. A pistachio, for example
26. Something kept as a reminder (9)

Clues Down

2. Unable or unwilling to speak (10)
3. To lose hope, strength, or vitality (10)
4. Private giving to those in need (12)
5. Annoying; tedious (12)
6. Soothing, mild (9)
7. To assist in a questionable activity (9)
8. Fame; honor (11)
9. Heavily decorated (11)
11. To distribute as a portion or share (9)
13. To cover with liquid (12)
15. A wealthy businessperson (12)
16. Favorable; not threatening (11)
17. Opposite of *clean*
19. Considered superior to others (10)
21. Opposite of *false*

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

ardent

är' dənt

adj. Intensely eager; passionate.

In spite of Miriam's **ardent** praise of Dontrell, I was not convinced of his ability.

ardor *n.* Passionate intensity of feeling.

Romeo's **ardor** led him to take great risks to see his beloved Juliet.

assail

ə sāl'

v. 1. To attack violently or verbally.

Critics **assailed** the book when it first appeared, but the reading public loved it.

2. To trouble in the mind.

During the test, feelings of guilt **assailed** Miranda as she peeked at the answers she had written on her hand.



.....
Talk to your partner about a time when worries assailed you.

asset

a' set

n. 1. Anything owned that is of value and can be sold or otherwise disposed of.

The late Mr. Kim's **assets** include a valuable coin collection.

2. A quality that can be used to advantage.

Height can be a great **asset** in a basketball player.



.....
Tell your partner what you think is your strongest asset.

barter

bär' tər

v. To exchange goods or services without the use of money.

Instead of taking cash for fixing the Walkers' garage window, DeRay **bartered** for a batch of their famous gumbo.

n. The exchange of goods or services without the use of money.

Commerce is conducted by **barter** in some rural areas, where many people have more fruits and vegetables than they can use themselves.

bonanza

bə nan' zə

n. A source of great wealth; something that brings great riches.

The discovery of gold in 1848 was a **bonanza** for the newly acquired territory that would become the state of California.

contagious

kən tā' jəs

adj. Able to be passed easily from one person to another.

They say that laughter is **contagious**.

contemplate
kän' təm plăt

v. 1. To give careful thought to; to ponder.
Einstein **contemplated** the relationship between matter and energy.
2. To have a possible plan to; to intend.
While still in college, Jordana **contemplated** going to either medical school or law school.



.....
Share with your partner how much time you spend contemplating your future.

deter
dē tūr'

v. To discourage or prevent from taking action.
Yesterday's rough seas **deterred** the divers from exploring the sunken ship.

deterrent n. Anything that prevents or discourages.
A "Keep Off" sign acts as a **deterrent** against trespassers.



.....
Tell your partner one deterrent to dropping out of school before graduating.

flair
flâr

n. A natural gift or ability; a talent.
The comedian's **flair** for bantering with audience members has made him a popular entertainer.

forfeit
fôr' fit

v. To be forced to give up or lose.
If you leave the stadium before the end of the concert, you **forfeit** the right to return.

n. Something lost or given up as a result of an error or failing.
You have to pay a **forfeit** if you can't answer the question.

innovation
in ə vā' shən

n. Something new; a new way of doing something.
Adding apps to cell phones was an **innovation** that transformed cell-phone technology.

innovative (i' nə vā tiv) adj. Marked by freshness or originality; willing to try new things.

Companies succeed by being **innovative** and keeping up with the latest technology.



.....
Work with your partner to come up with an innovative idea for your school.

mania
mā' nē ə

n. An intense or extreme enthusiasm or excitement.
The trendy new video-game system caused a **mania** in toy stores.



.....
Talk to your partner about something you have a mania for.

stymie
stī' mē

v. To thwart; to make difficulties for or find problems with.
Rosa's efforts to start her own lawn-mowing business were **stymied** when the mower kept breaking down.

synonymous
si non' ə məs



adj. Alike or close in meaning; closely related.

The company boasts that its name is **synonymous** with quality.

.....
Say a word to your partner that is synonymous with the word sweet.

wrangle
ran' gəl

v. To quarrel in a noisy or angry way.

Sue and Mario **wrangled** over whose turn it was to cut the grass.

13A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 13. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) is to recover it. (c) To contemplate something
(b) is to consider it. (d) To barter something

2. (a) a new method or improvement. (c) A mania is
(b) An innovation is (d) a collection of objects.

3. (a) To be stymied (c) is to be friendly.
(b) To be contagious (d) is to be thwarted.

4. (a) anything that discourages or prevents. (c) A flair is
(b) A deterrent is (d) a bright signal light.

5. (a) Ardor is (c) intensity of feeling.
(b) Barter is (d) an act of spite or revenge.

6. (a) is to receive it. (c) is to attack it.
(b) To assail something (d) To forfeit something
-
-

7. (a) A bonanza is (c) an irrational fear.
(b) A flair is (d) a source of riches.
-
-

8. (a) is to use it up or exhaust it. (c) is to have to give it up.
(b) To forfeit something (d) To barter something
-
-

9. (a) To be contagious is to be (c) of unknown authorship.
(b) To be synonymous is to be (d) passed easily to others.
-
-

10. (a) To barter is to (c) To wrangle is to
(b) quarrel or argue. (d) help or encourage.
-
-

ardent

assail

asset

barter

bonanza

contagious

contemplate

deter

flair

forfeit

innovation

mania

stymie

synonymous

wrangle

13B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. To Sid's mom, motorcycles and danger are **closely related in her mind**.
2. Maisie is **thinking about** what job she wants this summer.
3. "I don't understand this **intense excitement** for shopping," Jamie said crossly.
4. Don't let a minor setback **keep** you from doing what is best for you.
5. The twins began to **quarrel in a noisy manner** over whose turn it was.
6. The ability to identify with voters' concerns is a great **quality that can be used to advantage** when running for public office.
7. The society had no need of money as it survived economically by **exchanging goods and services with others**.
8. The poet's admirers are all **full of passionate intensity** in their support.
9. If the defendant does not show up, the money he paid to the court is **kept by those who were holding it**.
10. When it comes to making friends, Li-Mei has a real **ability that seems to come naturally to her**.

13C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which of the following were at one time considered an **innovation**?
 - parents
 - waterfalls
 - computers
 - radio
- Which of the following might be a **deterrent** to someone?
 - threats of punishment
 - hope of reward
 - offers of friendship
 - fear of failure
- Which of the following might exhibit **ardor**?
 - an advocate
 - a painting
 - a fanatic
 - a connoisseur
- Which of the following can **stymie** someone?
 - a problem
 - a bonanza
 - a riddle
 - an equation
- For which of the following might one have a **flair**?
 - linguishing in prison
 - impersonating celebrities
 - taking out the trash
 - hot-air ballooning
- Which of the following could **assail** someone?
 - doubts
 - blows
 - fears
 - threats
- Which of the following can be an **asset**?
 - money
 - good health
 - a gold watch
 - knowledge
- Which of the following could be **bartered**?
 - food
 - labor
 - cash
 - a table

ardent

assail

asset

barter

bonanza

contagious

contemplate

deter

flair

forfeit

innovation

mania

stymie

synonymous

wrangle

13D

Word Study: Similar Meanings

Choose from the two words provided and use each word just once when completing each sentence. One space should be left blank.

assailed / attacked

1. The president was _____ from every quarter by bad news.
2. Everyone agrees that the dog _____ the mail carrier.
3. Trinity _____ the ball with a mighty swing and sent it out of the ballpark.

bartered / exchanged

4. I went to the store and _____ the sweater I'd bought for a larger size.
5. She says she _____ the house for over a million dollars.
6. The Pilgrims _____ manufactured goods for food brought by the Wampanoags.

deter / discourage

7. Temperatures of over seven hundred degrees _____ life from forming on Venus.
8. I _____ my sister from coming in my room by locking the door.
9. The high admission standards are designed to _____ all but the most gifted applicants.

discern / detect

10. After staring at the puzzle for a while, I began to _____ a pattern.
11. If there's carbon monoxide present, this gadget will _____ it immediately.
12. I _____ that Millie hardly ever leaves the house these days.

enhance / improve

13. They decided to _____ the journey by going first-class.
14. A course in etiquette would _____ her manners.
15. A new kitchen will certainly _____ the value of your home.

Read the passage.



More Than Just a Pretty Flower

The Winkel family lived in the town of Alkmaar in Holland. There were Mr. Winkel himself; his wife, Elisabeth; and their seven children. Winkel had a **flair** for business, and the family was well provided for. He kept a tavern in Alkmaar and also raised tulips, which were just then becoming fashionable in Holland. Sadly, sometime between 1631 and 1635 (the date is uncertain), Elisabeth died, leaving her husband a widower with three boys and four young girls to care for.

More misfortune was to follow; in 1636, Mr. Winkel died. In those days, it was not uncommon for children to lose both parents, and in fact, the Winkel children were luckier than most. Thanks to its trade with the East Indies, Holland was one of the wealthiest countries in Europe. Money was being poured into fine houses in Amsterdam and Haarlem, into paintings and other works of art (this was the age of Rembrandt and Franz Hals), and into all manner of luxury goods. But money also went into such **innovations** as government-run orphanages. And it was to the Alkmaar orphanage that the seven Winkel children were taken. There, you may be sure, they were very unhappy, although well cared for by the standards of the time.

Winkel's **assets** had been the tavern, worth very little, and his patch of tulip bulbs planted several years earlier. In the spring of 1636, just before he died, records show that he owned about seventy bulbs, prized for their rarity and beauty, as well as a number of lesser varieties. Several years earlier, the prices that some bulbs fetched at tulip auctions had begun to rise, slowly at first. The trend accelerated as more and more people saw a rare opportunity to get rich. Prices could double in a week. It was important to act quickly.

Soon, single bulbs were selling for hundreds, then thousands of guilders. This was at a time when a carpenter's annual earnings were about 250 guilders a year. For a deposit of a hundred guilders and a written promise to pay the balance at a later date, a person could buy a bulb worth a thousand guilders. Then it was just a matter of waiting for the price to double; when that happened, the bulb could be sold for a profit of a thousand guilders. A carpenter could make as much in a week as he could by working for four years! Repeat this a few times and he could now **contemplate** a life of ease. To raise the hundred guilders, of course, he had to sell his tools.

| |
|-------------|
| ardent |
| assail |
| asset |
| barter |
| bonanza |
| contagious |
| contemplate |
| deter |
| flair |
| forfeit |
| innovation |
| mania |
| stymie |
| synonymous |
| wrangle |

Greed is **contagious**! The number of buyers increased rapidly even as the supply of bulbs remained unchanged. Those who had been indifferent to the tulip craze now became **ardent** bidders at the bulb auctions held throughout the land. Most knew little or nothing of business, or of tulips for that matter, but that did not **deter** buyers.

The **mania** was at its height by February 5, 1637. On that day, Winkel's collection of tulip bulbs was sold at auction. The proceeds were to be shared among his children, who, you may remember, were living at the Alkmaar orphanage. Those attending were, for the most part, wealthy connoisseurs seeking to add to their already exquisite collections. This was a unique opportunity for them to obtain some of the rarest, most beautiful tulips in the world, for Mr. Winkel had known just what he was doing when he planted his tulip patch several years earlier. That night, the bidding exceeded the most wildly optimistic forecasts. Seventy exceptionally rare tulip bulbs, plus a number of lesser varieties, realized ninety thousand guilders (about twelve million today in U.S. dollars).

Almost immediately, those involved in the tulip trade were **assailed** by doubts. Surely, prices couldn't possibly go any higher. All at once everyone wanted to sell, and no one wanted to buy. Buyers and sellers were **stymied** in their efforts to settle accounts. Those who had previously agreed to buy refused to take delivery and **forfeited** their deposits. Those who had **bartered** their homes for a tulip bulb were now homeless.

The Winkel children were not involved in any of this **wrangling**. The three boys and four little girls were rich, and their **bonanza** was secure. But thousands of bewildered traders in the bulb business were ruined. Ironically, Holland never lost its love for tulips. In fact, Holland and tulips are **synonymous** to this day, as any visitor to that country will tell you.

- Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. Before 1630, what were the Winkel family's **assets**?

2. Trade meant wealth for Holland. Give some examples of what wealth brought.

3. Explain how the rise in price of bulbs gave workers a new future to **contemplate**.

4. Did Winkel have good business sense?

5. What does **contagious** mean as it is used in the passage?

6. What should have **deterred** bidders at the bulb auctions?

7. When did the **mania** for tulip sales reach its height?

8. What happened to the **ardor** of bidders after this date?

9. If bulb traders were **assailed** by doubts, how did that affect the business?

10. The word **stymie** originated in golf. It meant "an object that obstructs a ball or another ball that obstructs a ball." What **stymied** bulb trade?

11. What did many **forfeit**?

| |
|-------------|
| ardent |
| assail |
| asset |
| barter |
| bonanza |
| contagious |
| contemplate |
| deter |
| flair |
| forfeit |
| innovation |
| mania |
| stymie |
| synonymous |
| wrangle |

12. How did some become homeless?

13. Before the trade collapsed, who enjoyed a **bonanza**?

14. What do you think the ruined traders were **wrangling** about?

15. If Holland is **synonymous** with tulips, what might Hawaii be **synonymous** with?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

- Don't confuse **flair** with its homophone *flare*, "a bright light used as a signal."
- As well as being a complete word by itself, **mania** attaches to a number of roots to form other words related to mental illness. These include *pyromania*, an uncontrollable desire to start fires; *kleptomania*, an uncontrollable desire to steal; and *trichotillomania*, an uncontrollable desire to pull out one's own hair.
- **Wrangle** has an additional meaning to the one you learned from the word list, one that comes from the days of the Old West. To cowboys, *wrangling* meant "herding cattle." In fact, *wrangler* is another name for *cowboy*. If a dispute arose while doing their job, a pair of cowboys could *wrangle* cattle and *wrangle* with one another, even on horseback.

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

congenial

kən jēn' yəl

adj. 1. Getting along well with others; affable.

The people in the small town were very **congenial** when the tourist asked many questions.

2. Suited to one's needs or tastes; agreeable.

We found a **congenial** little neighborhood on the south side.



.....
Ask your partner who the most congenial student in the class is.

decipher

dē sī' fər

v. 1. To convert from a code or secret writing into ordinary language; to decode.

You **decipher** the coded message by replacing numbers with the corresponding letters.

2. To interpret the meaning of something puzzling; to solve.

The writing in these old letters is so faded that it is almost impossible to **decipher** the words.

dissect

di sekt'

v. 1. To cut into in order to study.

Students taking the biology course **dissect** a dead frog to learn about the internal organs.

2. To study closely; to analyze.

After Coach Willard and the team members had watched the video of last week's game, they **dissected** the plays that had gone wrong.



.....
Tell your partner about a book or a movie you dissected so that you could understand it better.

enigma

ə nig' mə

n. Anything that is puzzling, mysterious, or hard to figure out.

Even after many studies, the purpose of the huge, complex designs formed in the dirt of the Peruvian desert remains an **enigma**.

enigmatic *adj.* (en ig mat' ik) Puzzling; mysterious.

After I heard Lucia's **enigmatic** phone message, I called her immediately to find out what was going on.

ineffectual

in ə fek' chō əl

adj. Not bringing about the desired result; futile.

My attempt to grow tomato plants from seed has been **ineffectual**, with most withering before they sprout leaves.



.....
Discuss with your partner what you can do if your efforts to improve your grades are ineffectual.

infallible
in fal' ə bəl

adj. 1. Incapable of making an error; never wrong.
The dictionary is an **infallible** resource for checking word spellings and meanings.
2. Unlikely to fail or go wrong.
Baking a big batch of brownies was Grandmother's **infallible** method of cheering us up.

irrepressible
ir i pres' ə bəl

adj. Incapable of being controlled or held back.
Charlie's **irrepressible** sense of humor helps make history class fun.

luminous
loo' mə nə s

adj. 1. Giving off light.
Do you have a watch with a **luminous** face that you can bring on our camping trip?
2. Clear; easy to understand.
Jennie's history teacher praised her **luminous** prose in her research paper.



.....
Ask your partner how many luminous screens he or she brought to school today (for example, a cell phone or watch).

millennium
mi len' ē ə m

n. A period of one thousand years.
A **millennium** is ten times as long as the one-hundred-year period of a century.

mire
mī r

n. An area of wet, swampy ground; deep mud.
Last night's heavy rains have turned the field into a **mire**, delaying the soccer match for several days.
v. To get stuck as if in a mire; unable to make progress.
The organizers of the race became **mired** in a bewildering set of rules and regulations.

pestilence
pes' tə lə ns

n. A rapidly spreading and usually fatal disease.
The **pestilence** that swept through Europe in the 1300s killed three-quarters of the population.

stagnate
stag' nāt

v. To fail to develop, change, or move.
Students' minds may **stagnate** if they are not challenged.

stagnant *adj.* (stag' nə nt) Not moving, changing, or developing.
As we approached the edge of the lake, we found **stagnant**, muddy water instead of the cold clear ripples we had expected.



.....
Chat with your partner about why a flower's growth may stagnate during a drought.

sublime
sə blīm'

adj. Great or noble in expression, thought, or manner; splendid.
Standing on the rim of the Grand Canyon at dawn, we had a **sublime** panorama of the canyon walls changing color in the morning light.



.....
Talk to your partner about the most sublime thing you have ever seen or heard.

vie v. To compete for, as in a contest.
vī By January, the top eight schools in the state **vied** for the debate championship.

voluminous *adj.* Having great bulk or volume; ample.
və lōōm' ə nəs The museum will exhibit a select group of bowls and jugs from its **voluminous** collection of Pueblo pottery.



.....
Figure out with your partner some things the school has a voluminous supply of.

14A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in bold is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

- (a) The experts cannot explain the **infallible** drop in the amount of snow this year. ____

(b) Self-driving cars must be **infallible** before being allowed on the road. ____

(c) Drawing blood was once regarded as an **infallible** cure for many diseases. ____

(d) It was **infallible** how much my dog loves to play fetch. ____
- (a) Harvest the **enigma** when it's almost ripe. ____

(b) Much of what went on in the boy's tree house was an **enigma** to his parents. ____

(c) The **enigmatic** answer to two plus two is four. ____

(d) The teacher's **enigmatic** lecture left students feeling very unprepared for the test. ____
- (a) The eagle made an **ineffectual** attempt to catch the mouse. ____

(b) Relying on old road maps is an **ineffectual** way to get where you need to go. ____

(c) If what you're doing is **ineffectual**, my advice is to try something else. ____

(d) The signing of the Declaration of Independence was an **ineffectual** date in American history. ____
- (a) The chess player **dissected** every move his opponent made. ____

(b) The science teacher **dissected** the frog while the biology students observed. ____

(c) Three students **dissected** that they wouldn't go to the party. ____

(d) At the ballet recital, the conductor **dissected** her orchestra to begin playing. ____

5. (a) The actor in the movie tried to **decipher** out of the plane with a parachute. ____
 (b) During the war, code breakers were able to quickly **decipher** enemy messages. ____
 (c) Karla's poor handwriting makes her letters hard to **decipher**. ____
 (d) Experts can easily **decipher** the hieroglyphics on the walls of Egyptian tombs. ____
6. (a) People are likely to vote for the candidate who seems most **congenial**. ____
 (b) Smallpox was once **congenial** but is now under control. ____
 (c) My friends are a **congenial** bunch, and we all get along really well. ____
 (d) Going to a **congenial** school makes learning more fun. ____
7. (a) Gravity is the **irrepressible** force that gives the universe its shape. ____
 (b) The teacher warned Zee several times about her **irrepressible** outbursts. ____
 (c) My brother's **irrepressible** grin kept us in good humor during the traffic jam. ____
 (d) The submarine reached the **irrepressible** depth of thirty-five thousand feet. ____
8. (a) A pound of feathers is just as **luminous** as a pound of lead. ____
 (b) From space, our cities at night look like **luminous** webs or networks. ____
 (c) The author's **luminous** prose is what first attracted her readers. ____
 (d) Stars would be as **luminous** as the sun if they were as close to Earth. ____
9. (a) I was warned not to get **mired** in the rules of the game. ____
 (b) Heavy rain turned the field into an impassable **mire**. ____
 (c) The thick **mire** made it difficult to see more than twenty yards ahead. ____
 (d) Wagons became **mired** in the mud and had to be abandoned. ____
10. (a) My dad says too much television will cause my brain to **stagnate**. ____
 (b) **Stagnant** water is a breeding ground for mosquitoes. ____
 (c) There are no plans in the government to revive our **stagnant** economy. ____
 (d) Both sides finally **stagnated** their position, and a compromise was found. ____

| |
|---------------|
| congenial |
| decipher |
| dissect |
| enigma |
| ineffectual |
| infallible |
| irrepressible |
| luminous |
| millennium |
| mire |
| pestilence |
| stagnate |
| sublime |
| vie |
| voluminous |

14B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *plentiful*?
(a) copious (b) sublime (c) voluminous (d) ample
2. Which word or words go with *compete*?
(a) furnish (b) decipher (c) vie (d) dissect
3. Which word or words go with *impressive*?
(a) congenial (b) sublime (c) voluminous (d) awesome
4. Which word or words go with *disease*?
(a) contagious (b) epidemic (c) pestilence (d) infallible
5. Which word or words go with *many years*?
(a) millennium (b) interminable (c) luminous (d) imminent
6. Which word or words go with *friendly*?
(a) stagnant (b) affable (c) cordial (d) congenial
7. Which word or words go with *puzzling*?
(a) congenial (b) enigmatic (c) infallible (d) ineffectual
8. Which word or words go with *failure*?
(a) futile (b) sublime (c) ineffectual (d) enigmatic
9. Which word or words go with *bright*?
(a) affluent (b) brilliant (c) luminous (d) voluminous
10. Which word or words go with *slow moving*?
(a) sublime (b) congenial (c) stagnant (d) sluggish

14C

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. We **deciphered**

- (a) the secret messages after studying the code for hours.
- (b) the markings on the cave wall and believe them to be over a thousand years old.
- (c) the chances of winning as no better than one in ten.
- (d) between taking a vacation or using the money to buy a computer.

2. An **irrepressible**

- (a) seatbelt held the car seat in place.
- (b) series of letters told the visitors where to go next.
- (c) optimism is Max's most likeable trait.
- (d) curiosity led the scientist to find the cure.

3. The **millennium**

- (a) celebration was spectacular.
- (b) was the basic measuring unit in ancient Rome.
- (c) runs for a thousand miles and is visible from space.
- (d) will likely be filled with new technological inventions.

4. **Mired**

- (a) in legal problems, Silas was forced to sell his company.
- (b) forward through the water, she swam fast and furious.
- (c) music has a quick beat.
- (d) in deep mud, the vehicles could only churn their wheels.

5. The **pestilence**

- (a) known as the plague killed an estimated fifty million people in Europe.
- (b) was believed to be under control soon after it began to spread.
- (c) was carried by fleas that came into Europe on rats aboard ships.
- (d) caused flooding on a large scale in low-lying areas.

6. **Stagnant**

- (a) letters to the local newspaper protested the new mall.
- (b) horses are fast, always moving and full of energy.
- (c) pools of water were left behind by the heavy rain.
- (d) growth in employment was reported two years in a row.

congenial

decipher

dissect

enigma

ineffectual

infallible

irrepressible

luminous

millennium

mire

pestilence

stagnate

sublime

vie

voluminous

7. **Voluminous**

- (a) behavior during school will not be ignored.
- (b) documents were found at the author's home.
- (c) letters from Civil War soldiers give historians much valuable material.
- (d) layers of clothing were worn by elite ladies in the 1800s.

8. People **vie**

- (a) to become instant millionaires by buying lottery tickets.
- (b) to eat at restaurants when they do not want to cook.
- (c) shooting stars with powerful telescopes.
- (d) with each other to win the best prizes.

14D

Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. A **sublime** trip for me would be

_____ .

2. I would like a **congenial** friend because

_____ .

3. I know I would be **ineffectual** if I

_____ .

4. If someone has an **irrepressible** sense of humor, that means

_____ .

5. A **voluminous** book would have lots of

_____ .

6. Coaches **dissect** their team's plays because

_____ .

7. Sometimes I get **mired** in

_____ .

8. I would **stagnate** emotionally if

_____ .

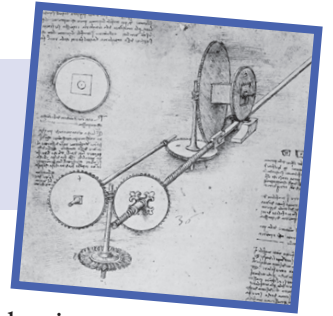
9. If a word I read is **enigmatic**, I could

_____ .

10. An **infallible** person is someone who

_____ .

Read the passage.



Leonardo da Vinci: Renaissance Man

The word *renaissance* means “rebirth.” It is applied to the reawakening of interest in learning and the arts that began in Italy in the fifteenth century. This brought to an end the **millennium** known as the Middle Ages, during which learning and the arts **stagnated**. It is impossible to set precise dates for the Renaissance, but it began to flower around 1450. Its supreme genius is considered by many to be Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1517).

Leonardo was born in the small village of Vinci, near Florence. As a youth, he studied painting and drawing in the workshop of the distinguished teacher Andrea del Verrocchio. His **congenial** disposition soon made him a popular member of Florence’s artistic circles. His extraordinary artistic ability, coupled with an **irrepressible** curiosity about the workings of nature, gave promise of his future greatness. His mind teemed with fresh ideas about music, science, and mathematics, a condition that exemplified the new spirit of the age. Leonardo did not learn from the ancient writings of classical Greece and Rome, which had long been regarded as **infallible** guides to everything from the movements of the heavens to the workings of the human body. Instead, Leonardo learned from the world he saw about him.

In his thirtieth year, Leonardo moved to Milan to serve as a military engineer at the court of Ludovico Sforza. Shortly after his arrival, the city was devastated by the **pestilence** known variously as the Plague or the Black Death. The traditional view was that such events were sent by God to punish the wicked. In contrast, Leonardo’s idea was to clean up the slums in hopes of preventing this tragedy from happening again. He filled his **voluminous** notebooks with designs for many projects, including the layout of towns, the building of churches, and improvements in weapons of war. He even drew up plans for submarines and helicopters. He wrote his notes in a left-handed “mirror script”; the writing can be **deciphered** only by holding it to a mirror and reading its reflection.

Leonardo lived during a turbulent period. At that time, political power rested with individual city-states that **vied** with each other for supremacy. In 1499, the French, allied to the city-state of Venice and backed by Pope Alexander VI, invaded Milan. This ended Sforza’s rule and caused Leonardo to flee the city. Two years before his departure, he had completed his painting

| |
|---------------|
| congenial |
| decipher |
| dissect |
| enigma |
| ineffectual |
| infallible |
| irrepressible |
| luminous |
| millennium |
| mire |
| pestilence |
| stagnate |
| sublime |
| vie |
| voluminous |

of the *Last Supper* on a wall of a Milan convent. Most painters of that period applied the paint onto the plaster before it had dried. The technique was known as fresco. It gave a **luminous** quality to the finished work. In contrast, Leonardo painted the *Last Supper* on dry plaster, using paints he had created. The painting began to deteriorate slightly even during Leonardo's lifetime. Yet its dramatic composition and **sublime** spiritual quality have inspired awe in its viewers.

The second great work of art for which Leonardo is renowned is the portrait of a young woman whose **enigmatic** smile has intrigued people for centuries. This painting became known as the *Mona Lisa*. Leonardo painted it in 1503, following his return to Florence. Also dating from this period is a series of precise anatomical drawings made by Leonardo. At that time, knowledge of the workings of the human body was nonexistent. Doctors relied on centuries-old texts to treat disease, making medical treatment largely **ineffectual**. Leonardo obtained corpses from a Florence hospital and **dissected** over thirty of these in order to observe and make a record of their structure.

In 1513, Leonardo moved to Rome to work. However, he often became so **mired** in thinking about and recording the ideas running through his mind that he did not complete very many projects. Francis I, the enlightened young king of France, invited Leonardo to his country. There he remained the king's guest for the last two and a half years of his life. Out of gratitude, Leonardo gave the *Mona Lisa* to the young king. It has remained in France ever since. Each year the painting attracts people from all over the world to view it in Paris's Louvre museum.

▶ **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. Why wasn't Milan a **congenial** place for Leonardo to be in 1499?

2. What evidence do we have of Leonardo's wide-ranging interests?

3. How does the passage indicate that we still do not know the reason for the *Mona Lisa* smile?

4. What did Leonardo achieve in his painting of the *Last Supper*?

5. What effect does the fresco technique give to a mural?

6. Give approximate dates of the **millennium** known as the Middle Ages.

7. How did scholars **decipher** Leonardo's writings?

8. How do we know that Sforza's defense of Milan was **ineffectual**?

9. What is the meaning of **stagnated** as it is used in the passage?

10. Why was so little known about the human body during Leonardo's time?

11. Why did the ideas of the Greeks and Romans go unquestioned by most people?

12. Name one human quality that helped bring about the Renaissance.

| | |
|--|---------------|
| | congenial |
| | decipher |
| | dissect |
| | enigma |
| | ineffectual |
| | infallible |
| | irrepressible |
| | luminous |
| | millennium |
| | mire |
| | pestilence |
| | stagnate |
| | sublime |
| | vie |
| | voluminous |

13. How does the passage show that Francis I was not **mired** in the past?

14. What did people believe was the cause of the Black Death?

15. How would you describe the relationship between Milan and Venice?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

-
- The Greek word for “fable” is *ainos*, and because the meaning of a fable has to be figured out, the verb *ainissesthai* came to mean “to speak in a puzzling way.” From the Greek verb came the Latin *aenigma*, “a puzzling speech or riddle.” Finally, the word passed into English as **enigma**, “anything that is puzzling or hard to figure out; a mystery.”
 - The Latin for “swamp” is *stagnum* and gives us the verb **stagnate**. The

water in a swamp does not flow; it *stagnates*. The adjective form is *stagnant*. The water in a swamp is *stagnant*.

-
- **Millennium** comes from the Latin words *mille*, “thousand,” and *annus*, “year.” The plural form is *millennia* or *millenniums*. The Latin *centum*, “one hundred,” gives us *century*, “a period of one hundred years,” and *decem*, “ten,” gives us *decade*, “a period of ten years.”

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

ascertain

as ər tăn´



v. To find out for certain.

Ms. Jenckes sent Tyrone to **ascertain** the cause of the delay.

.....
 Ask your partner to ascertain how many more minutes are left in class.

chastise

chas´ tīz

v. 1. To punish by beating.

A hundred years ago disruptive students were **chastised** with a cane.

2. To rebuke or criticize severely.

It is embarrassing to be **chastised** in public.**cull**

kul

v. To select and remove weak or inferior members from.

Game wardens **cull** the deer herd when it grows too large for the deer's food supply.**defer**

dē fēr´

v. 1. To put off or postpone.

Timothy **deferred** his decision about which team to join until he could talk to the coaches.

2. To yield to out of respect for the knowledge or authority of another.

My uncle usually **defers** to my aunt, who is a doctor, when someone in the family is sick.**deference** *n.* (def´ ər əns) Submitting to the wishes of another because of respect.Our parents taught my brother and me to show **deference** to our elders.

.....
 Tell your partner about a decision or an action you wish you had deferred so you could think more about it.

desist

di sist´

v. To refrain from continuing something.

Our principal told us we must **desist** from talking in study hall.**discredit**

dis kred´ it

v. 1. To hurt the reputation of.

Beckham was **discredited** when his own lies were found out.

2. To destroy confidence or trust in.

New scientific evidence often **discredits** earlier theories.

.....
 Talk with your partner about how you would feel if your hard work for a group project was discredited.

encroach

en krōch´

v. To advance little by little beyond the usual limits or boundaries.

We pruned the branches of the maple tree that **encroached** on our property.

foreboding
fôr bôd' in

n. A strong feeling that something bad is about to happen.
It was with **foreboding** that we began to search for the missing kitten.

humane
hyôo mân'



adj. Compassionate, kind to other human beings or to animals.
What is **humane** treatment for a horse with a broken leg?

.....
Discuss with your partner some humane actions you can take to help others less fortunate than you.

irrational
ir ash' ən əl



adj. Lacking sound judgment; not governed by reason.
As she approached the house, Candace felt an **irrational** fear inside herself.

.....
Share a completely irrational idea with your partner.

lurid
loor' id

adj. 1. Causing horror; extremely gruesome.
My parents will not give me permission to see that movie because of several **lurid** scenes it contains.
2. Glowing with the redness of flames seen through a haze.
The dense smog gave the rays of the setting sun a **lurid** cast.

perpetuate
pər pech' ôo ät



v. To cause to continue indefinitely.
Your negative attitude toward studying science just **perpetuates** your inability to get a good grade in the class.

.....
Chat with your partner about how prejudice is often perpetuated from one generation to the next.

restive
res' tiv

adj. Showing impatience because of restrictions or delays.
We grew **restive** as we awaited permission to return to our flooded house.

stamina
stam' ə nə

n. Physical strength or courage to resist hardship, illness, or fatigue.
Jill claims that running five miles a day has built up her **stamina**.

surveillance
sər vā' ləns



n. Close observation of a person or area.
Because of the recent incidents of vandalism, the police have put the high school under closer **surveillance**.

.....
With your partner, take thirty seconds to do surveillance of your classroom, and then discuss what you observed.

15A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 15. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) is to find out about it. (c) is to keep it a secret.
(b) To perpetuate something (d) To ascertain something

2. (a) To discredit someone is to (c) borrow from that person.
(b) hurt that person's reputation. (d) To chastise someone is to

3. (a) one that is enjoying a rest period. (c) one that is showing impatience.
(b) A restive group is (d) A humane group is

4. (a) a lack of certainty. (c) a close watch on a subject.
(b) Surveillance is (d) Stamina is

5. (a) criticize that person severely. (c) To defer to someone is to
(b) take that person's place. (d) To chastise someone is to

6. (a) To perpetuate something (c) To cull something
(b) is to keep it going. (d) is to put it out of one's mind.

7. (a) Foreboding is (c) doubt about something.
(b) Deference is (d) respect shown to another.

8. (a) A lurid account (c) is one that is highly critical.
(b) An irrational account (d) is one that shocks or horrifies.

9. (a) express one's feelings strongly. (c) To encroach is to
 (b) refrain from continuing something. (d) To desist is to
-

10. (a) Foreboding is (c) an uneasy feeling about what
 (b) Stamina is (d) the ability to predict future events.
-

15B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. That **glowing reddish** light in the night sky was caused by a burning haystack.
2. How can we **find out for certain** the time that Doug left the house?
3. The large number of dropouts from our high school **shows that it is impossible to trust** this enthusiastic report on progress.
4. Swimming laps every morning builds up one's **ability to withstand fatigue**.
5. Keeping dogs in such small cages is not **caring and compassionate**.
6. The suburbs continue to **move gradually beyond their borders** onto good farmland.
7. Dairy farmers usually **select and remove** those cows that produce the least milk and sell them.
8. After a conference with my coach, I was willing to **yield out of respect** to his suggestions.
9. Everyone in the family worried that grandfather had been **quite incapable of thinking clearly and logically** when he sold his house without consulting any of them.

| |
|--------------|
| ascertain |
| chastise |
| cull |
| defer |
| desist |
| discredit |
| encroach |
| foreboding |
| humane |
| irrational |
| lurid |
| perpetuate |
| restive |
| stamina |
| surveillance |

10. We used a camera to put our garage under **close observation** to find out what is going through our trash at night.

15C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which of the following can be **deferred**?
(a) a final decision (c) the first day of spring
(b) payment (d) one's retirement
- Which of the following might fill one with **foreboding**?
(a) an anonymous threat (c) an affable teacher
(b) a strange noise (d) a malevolent classmate
- Which of the following can be **ascertained**?
(a) the price of a car (c) the details of a dream
(b) the age of Earth (d) the weight of a diamond
- Which of the following can be **irrational**?
(a) behavior (c) fear
(b) people (d) heat
- Which of the following can be **lurid**?
(a) the sky (c) a dialect
(b) a novel (d) a fanfare
- Which of the following might become **restive**?
(a) a loose boulder (c) an irksome task
(b) a bored audience (d) a small child
- For which of the following would one need **stamina**?
(a) succumbing to an injury (c) cycling across the country
(b) contemplating nature (d) making a cake
- Which of the following can be **discredited**?
(a) an explanation (c) a claim
(b) a rumor (d) a report

15D

Word Study: Analogies

Complete the analogies by selecting the pair of words whose relationship most resembles the relationship of the pair in capital letters. Circle the letter next to the pair you choose.

1. MILLENNIUM : CENTURY ::
 - (a) winter : summer
 - (b) space : time
 - (c) kilometer : mile
 - (d) decade : year

2. PLEASANT : SUBLIME ::
 - (a) plain : ornate
 - (b) sore : excruciating
 - (c) healthy : sick
 - (d) brief : concise

3. SCOLD : CHASTISE ::
 - (a) echo : reverberate
 - (b) depart : embark
 - (c) praise : lionize
 - (d) increase : augment

4. PATIENT : RESTIVE ::
 - (a) serene : turbulent
 - (b) brief : concise
 - (c) bizarre : inane
 - (d) gruesome : grotesque

5. FOREBODING : MEMORY ::
 - (a) claustrophobia : space
 - (b) inkling : suspicion
 - (c) future : past
 - (d) imagination : reality

6. PERPETUATE : HALT ::
 - (a) depict : illustrate
 - (b) deter : discourage
 - (c) encroach : withdraw
 - (d) defer : yield

7. LUMINOUS : LIGHT ::
 - (a) tasty : tongue
 - (b) audible : sound
 - (c) sunny : day
 - (d) starry : night

8. ENTHUSIASM : MANIA ::
 - (a) serenity : turmoil
 - (b) defiance : mutiny
 - (c) doctor : patient
 - (d) health : pestilence

9. CONGENIAL : SMILE ::
 - (a) contagious : disease
 - (b) ardent : ardor
 - (c) synonymous : name
 - (d) angry : frown

10. BARTER : GOODS ::
 - (a) exchange : greetings
 - (b) create : art
 - (c) play : sports
 - (d) perform : audience

| |
|--------------|
| ascertain |
| chastise |
| cull |
| defer |
| desist |
| discredit |
| encroach |
| foreboding |
| humane |
| irrational |
| lurid |
| perpetuate |
| restive |
| stamina |
| surveillance |

Read the passage.



Who's Afraid of the Big, Bad Wolf?

Early American settlers, alone at night in their log cabins, far from their nearest neighbors, must have had a sense of **foreboding** as they heard the howling of wolves in the darkness. **Lurid** stories of savage attacks on humans had fired their imaginations; they believed that the wolf was a ferocious beast who made unprovoked attacks on humans. Phrases such as “keeping the wolf from the door” and tales like “Little Red Riding Hood” may have **perpetuated** this misunderstanding.

This fear of wolves is quite **irrational**. Wolves do kill to live, but they seldom kill humans. Most stories of wolves attacking humans have been **discredited** by those who have studied the subject. One researcher investigating the behavior of arctic wolves in northern Canada removed a pup from its mother and took it into a nearby tent. Even though the mother became **restive**, she waited outside the tent until the pup was returned to her.

The truth is that wolves are quite wary of humans, if not completely afraid, and with good reason. During the last several hundred years, humans have **encroached** on their habitats. Trapping, shooting, and poisoning almost completely eliminated wolves from the lower forty-eight states. By the 1970s, the gray wolf, also known as the timber wolf, was found on the North American continent only in the northern United States and Canada.

In the last several decades, however, attitudes toward wolves have changed. People have realized that these creatures might not survive without human help. They have actively supported plans to reestablish wolves in wilderness areas where they once flourished. During the late 1980s, red wolves were successfully returned to regions of the southeastern United States where they once lived. In 1995, a three-year project to reintroduce gray wolves to one of their original habitats began in Yellowstone National Park.

To make sure these projects succeed, scientists and wildlife specialists have been studying wolves extensively. To gather information, they catch individual animals in **humane** traps, then fit them with collars containing radio transmitters before releasing them. These transmitters help the scientists **ascertain** the movements of wolf packs. Other observers keep the animals under **surveillance** from aircraft flying overhead.

From their observations, scientists know that a wolf pack usually consists of five to fifteen animals. The pack may need anywhere from forty to four hundred square miles in order to maintain itself. The area they require depends on the number of wolves in the pack and the amount of game available. In their continual search for food, wolves demonstrate tremendous **stamina**; they can maintain a steady pace for hours at a time if necessary. They show amazing intelligence as they work in close cooperation with each other while hunting. Their prey includes elk, moose, caribou, and deer. By **culling** herds of old or sick animals, wolves perform a valuable service: They strengthen the herd by leaving more grazing areas for the remaining animals. If a herd becomes much reduced, wolves will **desist** from preying on it until its size has increased to a normal level.

Wolves usually mate for life. They are very protective of their young, caring for them until they are fully grown at about two years. A strict social order is maintained within the pack. All **defer** to the leader, who alone decides when and where to hunt.

Scientists have observed that wolves communicate in various ways. Whimpering indicates restlessness or hunger; snarling is used to put members of the pack in their place if they become too assertive. A snarling wolf is like a parent **chastising** an unruly child. And what about the howling in the night that struck terror into the American settlers' hearts? It was probably a warning to other wolves that the wolves' scent had been detected and they were invading territory that was already occupied. It did not mean that an attack on humans was imminent. As a Canadian trapper is once supposed to have said, "Anyone who says he's been et by a wolf is a liar."

▶ **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. How do wolves keep herds of deer and other animals healthy?

2. How have the actions of humans toward wolves changed in the last thirty years?

| |
|--------------|
| ascertain |
| chastise |
| cull |
| defer |
| desist |
| discredit |
| encroach |
| foreboding |
| humane |
| irrational |
| lurid |
| perpetuate |
| restive |
| stamina |
| surveillance |

3. What is the meaning of **discredited** as it is used in the passage?

4. How might the mother wolf who had her pup taken away have communicated that she was **restive**?

5. Why would it be inaccurate to say that all members of a wolf pack treat each other as equals?

6. Why might it be **irrational** to fear wolves today?

7. What is the meaning of **chastise** as it is used in the passage?

8. Why were people's **forebodings** unnecessary when they heard wolves howl?

9. How do researchers **ascertain** information about wolves today?

10. Why do you think **surveillance** of wolf-pack movements would be easier in winter?

11. Why are tales like "Little Red Riding Hood" unfair to wolves?

12. What is the meaning of **lurid** as it is used in the passage?

13. What is one possible reason for wolves howling?

14. What is required of a **humane** trap for catching wolves?

15. What physical quality do wolves have that makes them good hunters?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- One very well-known line of poetry is Alexander Pope’s “To err is human, to forgive divine.” However, what he actually wrote was, “To err is humane, to forgive divine.” In the early eighteenth century, when the line was written, *human* and **humane** did not have separate meanings. This is no longer the case. *Human* refers to any quality—good, bad, or neutral—associated with human beings. (The *human* voice has a range of about two octaves.) *Humane* is restricted to those qualities that express sympathy for other creatures. (The law requires the *humane* treatment of animals in captivity.)

.....

- In Greek mythology, the three fates were goddesses who controlled the length of human life. They were Clotho, who spun the thread of life; Lachesis, who measured its length; and Atropos, who cut it. The Greek word for thread is *stemon*, which passed into Latin as *stamina*, the plural of which is **stamina**. Those who lived a long time were believed to have lengthy *stamina*, or “threads of life.” Because people who lived to an old age were believed to have physical strength and endurance, *stamina* came to have these meanings. Note that although *stamina* is a plural form in Latin, in English *stamina* is treated as a singular noun.

| |
|--------------|
| ascertain |
| chastise |
| cull |
| defer |
| desist |
| discredit |
| encroach |
| foreboding |
| humane |
| irrational |
| lurid |
| perpetuate |
| restive |
| stamina |
| surveillance |

irrational

adjective 1. Not thinking clearly.
2. Not based on reason or good judgment.

*I can't help my **irrational** fear of birds.*

**Context Clues**

These sentences give clues to the meaning of **irrational**.

*Lou became **irrational** when she thought the referee made a bad call during the lacrosse game.*

*Christina thought her son made an **irrational** decision when he spent most of his savings on a dirt bike.*

Synonyms and Antonyms

Synonyms: illogical, inexplicable, unreasonable

Antonyms: logical, rational, valid

Discussion & Writing Prompt

Some people have **irrational** fears about things such as spiders or the dark. Describe an **irrational** fear you have and why it's **irrational**.

2 min.

1. Turn and talk to your partner or group.

Use this space to take notes or draw your ideas.

3 min.

2. Write 2–4 sentences.

Be ready to share what you have written.

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

alleviate

ə lē' vē āt



v. To relieve or make more bearable.

Gargling with saltwater **alleviates** a sore throat.

.....
Talk with your partner about what you do to alleviate the stress of homework, essays, and tests.

antidote

an' ti dōt



n. 1. A remedy that relieves the effects of a poison.

Scientists are looking for a snakebite **antidote** that might save thousands of lives.

2. Anything that offers relief from an undesirable condition.

Her surprise birthday party was an **antidote** to Anzi's losing the tennis match.

.....
Tell your partner what your favorite antidote to boredom is.

bedlam

bed' ləm

n. A very confused and noisy scene or situation.

Bedlam broke out in the auditorium among students and parents when it was announced that the school was going to be closed.

cajole

kə jōl'

v. To urge with gentle and repeated requests; to coax.

Willa allowed herself to be **cajoled** into acting as class treasurer.

glib

glib

adj. Marked by an ease in speaking or writing that often shows lack of concern or sincerity.

The candidate's **glib** responses to questions made it difficult to understand his opinion.

haggard

hag' ərd

adj. Having a tired look; worn out.

The **haggard** faces of the refugees spoke of many fearful days and sleepless nights.

immaculate

i mak' yōō lət



adj. 1. Perfectly clean; spotless.

The dining room's white linen tablecloths were starched and **immaculate** at the beginning of the reception.

2. Without a flaw; faultless.

His **immaculate** report cards since kindergarten mean that Luis will probably be admitted to any college he applies to.

.....
Discuss with your partner the advantages and disadvantages of keeping your home immaculate.

incessant
in ses' ənt



adj. Going on without interruption; continual.
We hardly slept because of the **incessant** noise from the apartment downstairs.

.....
Describe to your partner either an incessant noise that bothers you or an incessant noise you don't really notice.

indulgent
in dul' jənt

adj. Inclined to give in easily; lenient.
The **indulgent** parents bought their son every video game he asked for.
indulge *v.* 1. To give in too easily to the wishes of.
My grandparents loved to **indulge** my brothers and me when they came to visit.
2. To yield to.
I **indulged** my craving for something sweet by having an ice-cream cone.

loll
ləl

v. 1. To sit back in a relaxed way; to sprawl.
I **loll**ed in the hammock for most of that humid summer afternoon.
2. To hang loosely; to droop.
After the storm, the seasick passenger's head **loll**ed over the rail of the ship.

pittance
pit' ns

n. A very small amount, especially of money.
Even though the summer job pays only a **pittance**, I decided to take it because I needed the experience.

pungent
pun' jənt

adj. 1. Having a sharp taste or smell.
A **pungent** sauce of pineapple and ginger was served over the pork.
2. Sharply critical; painfully direct.
The newspaper editorial contained **pungent** criticism of the committee's proposed cuts in the city's education budget.



.....
Chat with your partner about whether giving a pungent criticism is good, because it is honest, or bad, because it might be hurtful.

rue
rū



v. To feel regret or sorrow over.
After his outburst, he immediately **rue**d his angry words.

.....
Tell your partner how you felt after you said or did something that you now rue.

strident
strid' nt

adj. Harsh and grating; loud and shrill.
The counselor's **strident** voice awakened the campers every morning.

vehement
vē' ə mənt



adj. Expressing strong feeling; intense.
Their differing beliefs sometimes caused **vehement** arguments between the friends.

.....
Talk with your partner about whether you are comfortable or uncomfortable having a vehement argument with someone.

16A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in **bold** is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

1. (a) Because we fed the squirrels, they became **indulgent** for more. ____
 (b) I **indulged** my craving for seafood by ordering shrimp. ____
 (c) I **indulge** my little cousin by giving him my extra change. ____
 (d) **Indulgent** leaders know exactly what they want and how to get it. ____

2. (a) Migrant workers received a **pittance** for ten hours toiling in the hot sun. ____
 (b) I removed the peach **pittance** before cutting the flesh into slices. ____
 (c) To a millionaire, a fifty-dollar tip was a **pittance**. ____
 (d) My dad counted out fifty **pittances** and handed them to me. ____

3. (a) Ice and rest may **alleviate** a minor ankle sprain. ____
 (b) I managed to **alleviate** my grade from a B to an A-. ____
 (c) My uncle is trying to **alleviate** his headache with medicine. ____
 (d) I was glad to be **alleviated** of the stress of my job as a dishwasher. ____

4. (a) People were barely able to survive in such **glib** conditions. ____
 (b) Simone's **glib** comments showed she had given the matter little thought. ____
 (c) Some thought him eloquent, but I considered him merely **glib**. ____
 (d) Ibrahim looked **glib** when I asked him about his winning touchdown. ____

5. (a) Wan was known for his **pungent** articles attacking the mayor. ____
 (b) **Pungent** spices from China and India play a big part in Ada's cooking. ____
 (c) A **pungent** sauce using tamarind complemented the curry. ____
 (d) The travelers were **pungent** for home after being away for a month. ____

6. (a) I **rue** the day I turned down my friend's offer of help. ____
 (b) I **rued** Zhin an e-mail saying how sorry I was. ____
 (c) She told me she **rued** giving him advice because he took it poorly. ____
 (d) I like to **rue** in the morning before I've had breakfast. ____

7. (a) When crossing the desert, we carried an **antidote** for scorpion bites. ____
 (b) The villain had developed a poison for which there was no **antidote**. ____
 (c) For Aunt Agatha, the **antidote** for boredom was reading spy novels. ____
 (d) The comic told a few amusing **antidotes** about his life in the army. ____

| |
|------------|
| alleviate |
| antidote |
| bedlam |
| cajole |
| glib |
| haggard |
| immaculate |
| incessant |
| indulgent |
| loll |
| pittance |
| pungent |
| rue |
| strident |
| vehement |

8. (a) The movie star was **immaculate** in a white tuxedo. ____
 (b) I need fifteen **immaculate** minutes before I'm ready to go. ____
 (c) My sister keeps her room in **immaculate** condition, but mine is a mess. ____
 (d) Azid's hands are so **immaculate**, they need to be washed. ____
9. (a) We **cajoled** her into staying an extra day. ____
 (b) The dog was **cajoled** into jumping into the car. ____
 (c) The teacher **cajoled** the students to study for tomorrow's quiz. ____
 (d) The party ended early as many people had to **cajole** home. ____
10. (a) I thought five dollars was an **incessant** amount for a bottle of water. ____
 (b) The **incessant** rain has been driving people crazy for a month. ____
 (c) Aunt Dora was **incessant** that we stay the night. ____
 (d) **Incessant** rumblings gave us an early warning that an earthquake was imminent. ____

16B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *uproar*?
 (a) tumult (b) antidote (c) bedlam (d) pittance
2. Which word or words go with *poor health*?
 (a) immaculate (b) haggard (c) pungent (d) feeble
3. Which word or words go with *hang loosely*?
 (a) dangle (b) loll (c) rue (d) alleviate
4. Which word or words go with *give in easily*?
 (a) indulgent (b) incessant (c) placid (d) strident
5. Which word or words go with *regret*?
 (a) pittance (b) enigma (c) rue (d) reticent
6. Which word or words go with *unending*?
 (a) continuous (b) glib (c) incessant (d) pungent

7. Which word or words go with *cure*?
 (a) bedlam (b) pittance (c) haggard (d) antidote
8. Which word or words go with *intense*?
 (a) infallible (b) strident (c) stagnant (d) vehement
9. Which word or words go with *small*?
 (a) artisan (b) pittance (c) morsel (d) legacy
10. Which word or words go with *attention to detail*?
 (a) fastidious (b) enigmatic (c) pungent (d) immaculate

16C

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. The **haggard**
 (a) survivors had been adrift in an open boat for thirty days.
 (b) sunlight was crystal clear and beaming.
 (c) look on his face was full of energy and ambition.
 (d) parents of the newborn wished for just one full night of sleep.
2. We **loll**
 (a) back on the couch and closed our eyes.
 (b) the baby to sleep by singing a lullaby.
 (c) about the apartment until it was time to leave for the parade.
 (d) our opponents into thinking we were losing.
3. **Pungent**
 (a) pillows are recommended for those with back and neck problems.
 (b) criticism from the school board forced the principal to retire.
 (c) aromas came from the kitchen.
 (d) darkness greeted the campers as a cloud covered the moon.
4. His **vehement**
 (a) pillow was soft as he fell onto it.
 (b) cup fell off the table and spilled all over the floor.
 (c) voice could be heard all the way down the hall.
 (d) argument unfortunately didn't get him what he wanted.

| |
|------------|
| alleviate |
| antidote |
| bedlam |
| cajole |
| glib |
| haggard |
| immaculate |
| incessant |
| indulgent |
| loll |
| pittance |
| pungent |
| rue |
| strident |
| vehement |

5. The **antidote**

- (a) to highway deaths may turn out to be driverless cars.
- (b) to tears and sorrow is laughter and joy.
- (c) we just heard reminds me of a similar situation when I was younger.
- (d) for lead poisoning in children does not exist.

6. **Strident**

- (a) demands for better air conditioning were published in the school newspaper.
- (b) glasses of juice are on the counter.
- (c) keyboards can be picked up from the store.
- (d) shouts from the crowd could be heard two blocks down.

7. **Bedlam**

- (a) is spoken in the southern half of the country.
- (b) filled the air as the parents at the meeting began yelling.
- (c) broke out in the library when the students started dancing.
- (d) hit the crowded grocery store when the power went out.

8. I **cajoled**

- (a) the teacher into letting us have a five-minute break.
- (b) the inexperienced actor into thinking he could play the main role.
- (c) my hands with lotion and then stretched my arms.
- (d) my parents into renting a pony for my birthday party.

16D

Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. If someone is **cajoled**, that means he or she is

_____ .

2. Talking to a **glib** person about a serious issue might bother me because

_____ .

3. Something I like to keep **immaculate** is

_____ .

4. To **alleviate** a headache, I

_____ .

5. I sometimes **indulge** myself by

_____ .

6. My favorite way to **loll** is

_____ .

7. If I were paid a **pittance** after I worked hard, I would feel

_____ .

8. A **strident** person sounds

_____ .

9. When someone **rues** something, that means he or she

_____ .

10. I have a **vehement** belief in

_____ .

16E

Vocabulary in Context

Read the passage.



The Wisdom of Rabbi Rabinowicz

The Jewish people long ago discovered that humor can be an **antidote** for life's hardships, and this fact is reflected in many of their folk tales. The following story, from Russia, tells of Moishe, a hardworking but poor tailor, and his wife, Sarah. Did I say poor? Truth to tell, Moishe's business endeavors brought in barely enough money to pay the rent on their small house and put food on their table.

Moishe's brother Jacob and sister-in-law Martha lived in the adjoining village with their six children. Jacob described his occupation as a roofer, but his earnings never amounted to more than a **pittance**, for—as he never tired of explaining—a roofer can't work in the rain, and when it isn't raining, who needs roof repairs?

One day Jacob came to his brother with a plea for assistance. He and his family had been evicted from their home and were in dire need of a place to stay. Of course, it would be only temporary. Moishe sympathized with his brother but explained that his house was barely spacious enough for two. How would eight more people fit into it? But Jacob, though an indifferent roofer, was a **glib** talker. In no time at all, he had **cajoled** his brother into offering temporary accommodations.

| |
|------------|
| alleviate |
| antidote |
| bedlam |
| cajole |
| glib |
| haggard |
| immaculate |
| incessant |
| indulgent |
| loll |
| pittance |
| pungent |
| rue |
| strident |
| vehement |

Moishe and Sarah felt that a small army had invaded their home. The children were allowed to run wild because Jacob and Martha were the most **indulgent** of parents, never correcting them. Their muddy boots trampled dirt all over the floor, and the house, which had once been **immaculate**, became impossible to keep clean. Jacob spent the entire day **lolling** in Moishe's favorite armchair, while Martha's **strident** voice never offered any respite.

Sarah **rued** the day her husband had invited his relatives into their home. As for Moishe himself, he could scarcely sleep at night. When he grew increasingly **haggard**, Sarah became so anguished that she sent her husband to Rabbi Rabinowicz for guidance. The rabbi's advice was straightforward and uncomplicated. Knowing that Moishe kept a couple of goats and some hens in the backyard, he told the exhausted man to move the animals into the house. Moishe was bewildered. He could not imagine how such a preposterous action would **alleviate** the problem, but because the rabbi was renowned for his sage counsel, Moishe felt it was not his place to raise objections. Sarah, who had no such qualms, argued **vehemently** against the plan. In the end, neither one was willing to disregard completely the rabbi's recommendation, so they brought the goats and the hens into the house.

If things had been atrocious before, they were now ten times worse. The hens' **incessant** cackling nearly drove Moishe out of his mind, and the **pungent** odors of the goats were sickening. Poor Moishe's home was in such **bedlam** that any thought of sleep was impossible. In tears, he returned to the rabbi to ask what to do. The rabbi told him to return the goats and chickens to the backyard.

Moishe's relief was enormous as he drove the squawking chickens and the stubborn goats out from his house. The rooms suddenly seemed so peaceful that he scarcely noticed the unruly children, his loudmouthed sister-in-law, and his good-for-nothing brother.

"Peace," he murmured contentedly, "it's wonderful! That Rabbi Rabinowicz is a genius."

- **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. How do you know that Jacob made very little money as a roofer?

2. Why was Jacob able to talk his brother into letting him move in?

3. In this Jewish folk tale, why does the humor deal with hardship?

4. Why might it have been unpleasant to listen to Martha?

5. Why was Moishe becoming more and more **haggard**?

6. What is the meaning of **pungent** as it is used in the passage?

7. Why is it inaccurate to say that Sarah was happy to have her brother-in-law's family staying in her home?

8. Why was it impossible to escape the sound of Martha's voice?

9. How do we know that Jacob kept urging Moishe to let him move in?

10. What is the meaning of **immaculate** as it is used in the passage?

11. How did Moishe **indulge** his brother?

| |
|------------|
| alleviate |
| antidote |
| bedlam |
| cajole |
| glib |
| haggard |
| immaculate |
| incessant |
| indulgent |
| loll |
| pittance |
| pungent |
| rue |
| strident |
| vehement |

12. What is the meaning of **lolling** as it is used in the passage?

13. What seemed to **alleviate** the confusion and noise in Moishe's home?

14. What was Sarah's response to the rabbi's plan?

15. What are some details from the passage that illustrate that **bedlam** reigned in Moishe's home after the arrival of his brother's family?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- The Greek prefix *anti-* (meaning "opposite" or "against") combines with the Greek root *dosis* (meaning "something given") to form **antidote**. Note that *antidote* may be followed by *to* (a good book is an *antidote* to boredom), by *for* (an *antidote* for a snakebite), and by *against* (friendship as an *antidote* against loneliness). If you confuse this word with *anecdote* (meaning "a short, interesting, or amusing story about someone or something"), you might be called a Mrs. Malaprop.

.....

- Mrs. Malaprop is a character in a play called *The Rivals* by the eighteenth-century playwright Richard Brinsley Sheridan. She elicits laughter in the theater by confusing words that

are similar in sound but different in meaning. She is the sort of person who says she is going to tell you an amusing *antidote* or offer you what she would call an *anecdote* for a bee sting. Such a misuse of words is called a *malapropism*.

.....

- The Hospital of Saint Mary of Bethlehem in London was for several centuries a kind of prison for the severely mentally ill. In those days there was no effective treatment for such people. As a result, the "hospital" was a very noisy place, filled with confusion and tumult. Over time, its name was shortened to Bedlam. The "hospital" is long gone, but the word **bedlam**, meaning "a condition of noise and confusion," remains.

Lessons
13–16

Review

Hidden Message In the boxes provided, write the words from Lessons 13 through 16 that are missing in each of the sentences. The number after each sentence is the lesson the word is from. When the exercise is finished, the shaded boxes should spell out a definition from the “Devil’s Dictionary” of Ambrose Bierce, the American writer who was born in 1842 and disappeared while traveling in Mexico in 1913.

1. Three nights without sleep left him looking _____. (16)

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

2. His _____ answers suggested a lack of seriousness. (16)

3. Grandma told me just to _____ in her armchair. (16)

4. Her _____ for fashion design got her the job. (13)

5. My voice could not be heard above the _____. (16)

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

6. The _____ killed thousands before it ended. (14)

7. A stern look was enough to _____ the child. (15)

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

8. We must either make progress or _____. (14)

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

9. I could not _____ the scrawled message. (14)

10. I will _____ to your better judgment. (15)

11. Their dishonesty _____ the company. (15)

12. The horses grew _____ before the thunderstorm. (15)

13. She tried to _____ me into going with her. (16)

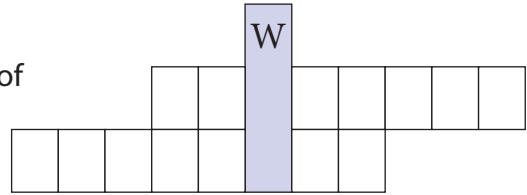
14. Her _____ comments showed her disapproval. (16)

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Lessons 13–16 Review continued

15. The committee proceeded despite the _____ objections of some members. (16)

16. Stars are _____ objects in the night sky. (14)



17. The _____ cries of seagulls filled the air. (16)

18. Let's not _____ over how much each of us will pay. (13)

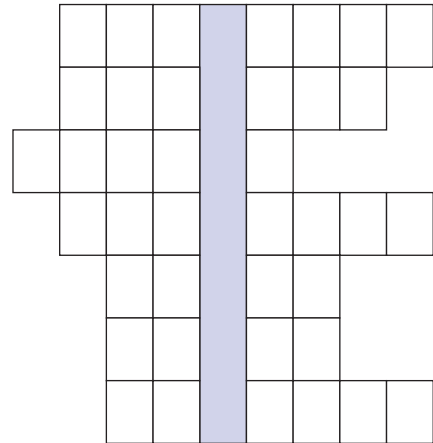
19. We've had enough; please _____ from bothering us. (15)

20. Exercise is a good _____ to stress. (16)

21. Her chief _____ is the family home. (13)

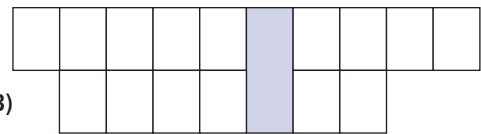
22. Setting my alarm will _____ me from sleeping in. (13)

23. A sharp instrument is needed to _____ the frog. (14)



24. Filled with _____, we nervously awaited the results. (15)

25. The land purchase proved to be a(n) _____ for the city. (13)



26. Talking to plants seems to be a(n) _____ act. (15)

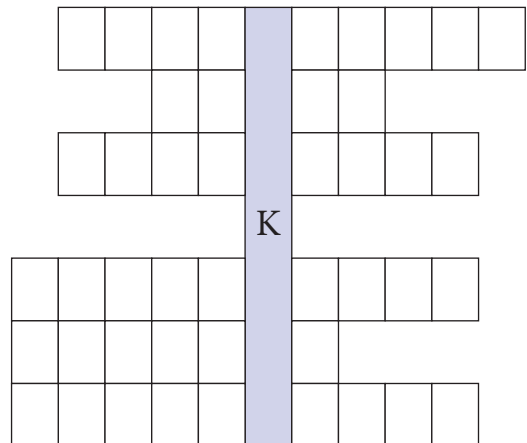
27. The comic had a(n) _____ for making children laugh. (13)

28. The child took advantage of the _____ babysitter. (16)

29. She has read all the _____ writings of Shakespeare. (14)

30. A sprinter needs speed rather than _____. (15)

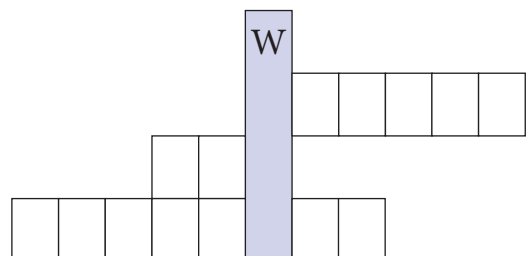
31. The flu is highly _____. (13)



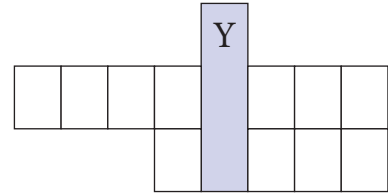
32. The shelter cared for pets in a(n) _____ manner. (15)

33. I _____ the day I agreed to take care of her pets. (16)

34. Although the pay was a(n) _____, I liked the work. (16)

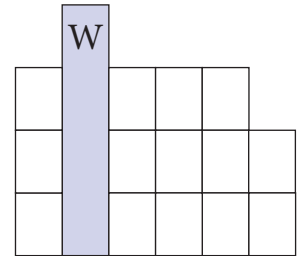


35. Our neighbors said that their garden would not _____ on our property. (15)



36. The _____ glow in the sky came from a chemical fire. (15)

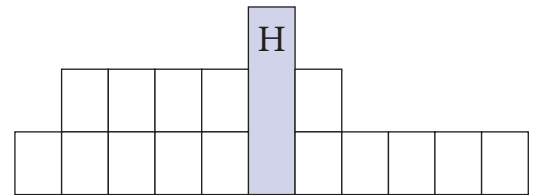
37. The children's _____ for crossword puzzles mystified Granddad. (13)



38. The poet's identity is a(n) _____ to this day. (14)

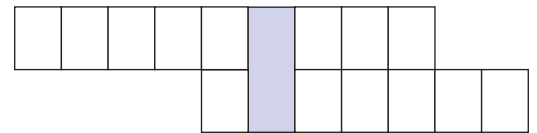
39. His objections will not _____ our plans. (13)

40. Clouds of mosquitoes began to _____ us. (13)



41. Do you _____ making any further changes? (13)

42. We will never _____ what really happened. (15)



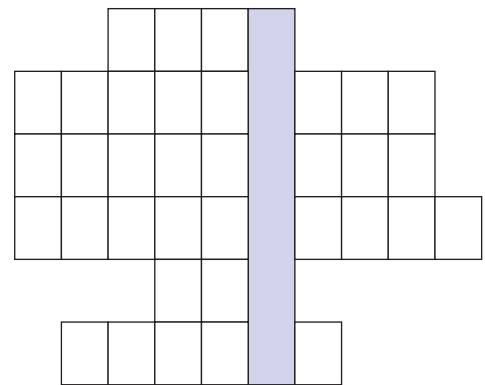
43. You _____ your right to brag if you don't win the game. (13)

44. Mom will _____ the smallest tomato plants. (15)

45. Pain medication should _____ a headache. (16)

46. _____ rains kept us indoors. (16)

47. Her answer did nothing but _____ the idea that she was lying. (15)



48. Colleges _____ to attract the best students. (14)

49. He's a(n) _____ believer in vigorous exercise. (13)

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

accord

ə kōrd'

n. A feeling of agreement or harmony; a formal agreement.
The members of the jury were in **accord** when the vote was taken.

affirm

ə fɜrm'



v. To declare positively.
My brother will **affirm** that the signature is mine.

.....
Affirm for your partner how important the study of vocabulary is.

bequeath

bē kwēth'

v. 1. To pass on to others.
Through her example of hard work, our mother has **bequeathed** to all her children an outstanding work ethic.

2. To leave to another in one's will.
This necklace was **bequeathed** to me by my grandmother.

bequest *n.* (bē kwest') Something bequeathed; a legacy.
The will contains a **bequest** of a thousand dollars to a friendly neighbor.

citadel

sit' ə dəl

n. A fortress on a hill; a stronghold.
The old section of Quebec City is surrounded by walls and dominated by a **citadel**.

confer

kən fɜr'

v. 1. To grant or bestow.
The school board president **conferred** diplomas upon all the high school graduates.

2. To consult.
The surgeon **conferred** with her colleague before deciding not to operate on the patient.



.....
Confer with your partner about the easiest way to eat an orange.

coup

koo

n. 1. A successful action that brings about a striking change.
Developing the new arts program was a **coup** for the young principal.

2. The overthrow of a government, especially by a group that has military or political power.
Fidel Castro's 1959 **coup** brought communism to the island nation of Cuba.

dignitary

dig' ni ter ē



n. A person who holds a high rank or position of honor.
Dignitaries from the United Nations attended the White House dinner.

.....
Discuss with your partner what sorts of things dignitaries might talk about at a White House dinner.

embroil
em broil'

v. To involve in an argument or conflict.
The two countries were **embroiled** in a bitter dispute over where the border between them lay.



.....
Talk to your partner about what you can do if you become embroiled in an argument with a friend.

epoch
ep' ək

n. An extended period of time marked by a series of related events.
The **epoch** known as the Cold War, a period of hostility without military conflict between the United States and the Soviet Union, began around 1945 and ended in 1991.

impeccable
im pek' ə bəl

adj. Free from fault or flaw; perfect.
The ballet dancer's **impeccable** execution of a midair turn elicited cries of "Bravo!" from the audience.



.....
Tell your partner what you think is more important and why: an impeccable fashion sense or impeccable taste in music.

institute
in' stə tōt

v. To establish, organize, or put into effect; to begin.
The new principal **instituted** important changes in class schedules and lunch times.

n. An organization set up to promote education or a particular cause.
Scholars at the **Institute** for Advanced Study in Princeton, New Jersey, conduct research in mathematics, physics, and historical and social sciences.



.....
Chat with your partner about what changes to your country you would institute if given the chance.

patriarch
pā' trē ārk

n. The male founder or ruler, such as of a family or tribe.
The Bedouins, nomadic desert tribes of Northern Africa, form extended families headed by **patriarchs**.

rapport
ra pōr'

n. A feeling of harmonious connection between people or groups of people.
Successful speakers quickly establish a **rapport** with the audience.

renounce
rē nouns'

v. To give up a right to, abandon; reject.
We **renounced** eating meat when we became vegetarians.
renunciation n. (rē nun sē ā' shən) The act of renouncing.
Acceptance into the animal-rights group meant the **renunciation** of wearing leather and fur clothing.



.....
Share with your partner something you would not want to renounce.

rhetoric
ret'ər ik

- n.* 1. The art of using language skillfully.
We studied **rhetoric** to improve our debating skills.
2. Exaggerated or insincere language that is without real meaning or worth.
Because it offered no practical solutions to inner-city housing problems, the mayor's speech was mere **rhetoric**.

17A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 17. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) something that is handed down. (c) A bequest is
(b) An accord is (d) a change of direction.

2. (a) A patriarch is (c) a person with great strength.
(b) A dignitary is (d) the male leader of a tribe.

3. (a) a type of car. (c) A coup is
(b) a formal agreement. (d) An accord is

4. (a) one who speaks eloquently. (c) A dignitary is
(b) one who holds a position of honor. (d) A citadel is

5. (a) Rhetoric is (c) an opportunity to make a difference.
(b) Rapport is (d) skill in the use of language.

| |
|------------|
| accord |
| affirm |
| bequeath |
| citadel |
| confer |
| coup |
| dignitary |
| embroil |
| epoch |
| impeccable |
| institute |
| patriarch |
| rapport |
| renounce |
| rhetoric |

6. (a) a fortress. (c) An institute is
(b) a beginning. (d) A citadel is
-
-

7. (a) a poem that relates a story. (c) A coup is
(b) an action that brings about a striking change (d) An epoch is
-
-

8. (a) To renounce an award is to (c) grant it.
(b) To confer an award is to (d) accept it.
-
-

9. (a) something left to a person in a will. (c) An epoch is
(b) an organization to promote a particular cause. (d) An institute is
-
-

10. (a) to declare it to be true. (c) To renounce something is
(b) To affirm something is (d) to go in search of it.
-
-

17B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. The twins have a good **feeling of emotional connection** with each other.
2. Candidates use **elaborate and ostentatious language** that attracts voters.
3. Before they knew what was happening, there was a(n) **seizure of government** that resulted in tyranny.
4. My grandmother **put in her will that she wished to leave** this gold locket to me.
5. The judges at the figure-skating competition **had a discussion** at great length before announcing the winner.
6. In 1936, King Edward VIII of England **gave up his right to** the throne in order to marry a divorced American, Mrs. Wallis Simpson.
7. The United States did not officially become **caught up in the conflict** in World War II until after the Japanese attack on the Pacific Fleet in Pearl Harbor in 1941.
8. The principal **set into motion** a policy that would discourage unnecessary absences at the high school.
9. Her behavior was **free of any fault** while she was with me.
10. With the death of Stalin, leader of the USSR (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) from 1924 to 1953, came the end of a(n) **period of time marked by a series of related events** in Russian history.

| |
|------------|
| accord |
| affirm |
| bequeath |
| citadel |
| confer |
| coup |
| dignitary |
| embroil |
| epoch |
| impeccable |
| institute |
| patriarch |
| rapport |
| renounce |
| rhetoric |

17C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which of the following might be **bequeathed**?
(a) a sum of money
(b) a work of art
(c) a piece of property
(d) a belief in democracy
- Which of the following can be **conferred**?
(a) a gift
(b) a love of freedom
(c) one's innocence
(d) a title
- Which of the following would be in **accord**?
(a) parties to an agreement
(b) rivals
(c) advocates for opposing views
(d) signers of a declaration
- Which of the following is an **institute**?
(a) Academy of Arts
(b) Boston City Hall
(c) Depot Restaurant
(d) American Civil Liberties Union
- Which of the following might indicate **rapprochement** between two people?
(a) an affable exchange of views
(b) a rebuke of one by the other
(c) turmoil in their relationship
(d) constant wrangling between them
- Which of the following occupations requires skill in **rhetoric**?
(a) lawyer
(b) dentist
(c) computer engineer
(d) football coach
- Which of the following is an **epoch**?
(a) the year 2000
(b) the Renaissance
(c) the Middle Ages
(d) one's high school years
- Which of the following is a **dignitary**?
(a) the president of a college
(b) the head of a conspiracy
(c) the president of a country
(d) the head of a household

17D

Word Study: Word Parts

Complete each sentence using prefixes and roots from the Latin words.

Prefixes

ad- (to)
con- (with)
dis- (apart)
im- (not)
in- (not)
syn- (together)

Latin Words

cessare (to cease) *ardere* (to burn)
levis (light) *mille* (thousand)
annus (year) *tangere* (to touch)
onuma (name) *lumen* (light)
macula (stain) *stagnum* (swamp)
secare (to cut)

- The prefix *ad-* combines with the root from *levis* to form _____, "to make lighter or less burdensome."
- Roots from the Latin word *mille* and *annus* combine to form _____, "a period of a thousand years."
- The prefix *con-* combines with the root from *tangere* to form _____, "easily passed from person to person."
- The prefix *in-* combines with the root from *cessare* to form _____, "going on without ceasing."
- The prefix *im-* combines with the root from *macula* to form _____, "without a stain; spotless."
- The prefix *syn-* combines with the root from *onuma* to form _____, "closely related; linked together."
- The word _____ means "burning with enthusiasm" and comes from the Latin *ardere*.
- The word _____ means "giving off light" and comes from the Latin *lumen*.
- The prefix *dis-* combines with the root from *secare* to form _____, "to cut into in order to study."
- The word _____ means "not changing" and comes from the Latin *stagnum*.

| |
|------------|
| accord |
| affirm |
| bequeath |
| citadel |
| confer |
| coup |
| dignitary |
| embroil |
| epoch |
| impeccable |
| institute |
| patriarch |
| rapport |
| renounce |
| rhetoric |



The Country Without an Army

At the close of the ceremony honoring him, the dark-haired, **impeccably** dressed forty-six-year-old passed among the many **dignitaries** gathered at San José's Metropolitan Cathedral. He stopped before a frail, elderly man, who had tears of joy streaming down his cheeks, and embraced him. On this occasion, Costa Ricans had gathered to celebrate their president, Oscar Arias Sánchez. Arias was about to leave for Oslo to receive the 1987 Nobel Prize for Peace.

This award was to be **conferred** upon Arias because he was the main architect of an **accord** known as "The Arias Peace Plan." It was signed that year by representatives from Nicaragua, Guatemala, Costa Rica, El Salvador, and Honduras. It **affirmed** the intentions of these countries to make a strong effort to end the armed conflict that had **embroiled** parts of Central America for decades. Arias was uniquely qualified to initiate this effort; for almost forty years, his country had enjoyed both domestic tranquility and a democratic political system. Both of these blessings had been **bequeathed** to Costa Rica by its former president José Figueres Ferrer, the man Arias now embraced.

In the early 1940s, Figueres was a successful but largely unknown coffee planter. He was outraged by the country's corrupt government. Like those that had preceded it, the government rigged elections; it shot or jailed political opponents; it allowed the army to brutalize the population into abject submission. In 1942, Figueres gave a radio speech attacking the country's president. For this act, he was sent into exile. But his courageous defiance made him a national hero. Six years later, he led an armed **coup** that toppled the government.

The year 1948 marked the beginning of a new **epoch** in Costa Rican history. In May of that year, Figueres formed a new government. Within months, his government had transformed Costa Rica. Among the reforms he **instituted** were full voting rights for women, low-cost health care, and free and open elections. But his most amazing accomplishment was the **renunciation** of war. This was not mere **rhetoric**. Figueres followed up his declaration by abolishing Costa Rica's army. Taking a sledgehammer, he struck the symbolic blow that began the destruction of the army's headquarters. As head of the National Liberation Party, which he formed, Figueres was three

times elected president of his country. Each reelection further indicated the strong **rapport** that existed between the citizens and this leader.

Now, in 1987, the aged Costa Rican **patriarch** stood on the steps of the Metropolitan Cathedral with Oscar Arias Sánchez. The younger man, he hoped, would carry their dream of peace beyond the nation's frontiers. The former and current presidents acknowledged the cheers of the people as they made their way on foot, and without need of protection, to the National Museum of Culture. This museum was once the site of the **citadel**, headquarters for the army. Observing the two leaders, an onlooker commented, "It was as though George Washington had appeared at the inauguration of John F. Kennedy."

Oscar Arias Sánchez served as president until 1990 and was reelected to a second term, which he served from 2006 until 2010. Between terms as president, he used his Nobel Prize money to establish the Arias Foundation for Peace and Human Progress.

- Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. What ended for Costa Rica in 1948?

2. How did the Costa Rican people **affirm** their respect for Figueres and Arias?

3. Was there anything unseemly about Figueres's record as president of Costa Rica? Explain.

4. What is the meaning of **rhetoric** as it is used in the passage?

5. In what way can José Figueres be compared to George Washington?

| |
|------------|
| accord |
| affirm |
| bequeath |
| citadel |
| confer |
| coup |
| dignitary |
| embroil |
| epoch |
| impeccable |
| institute |
| patriarch |
| rapport |
| renounce |
| rhetoric |

6. How has Costa Rica gotten along with its neighbors in recent decades?

7. Give evidence of the **rapprochement** between Figueres and the people of Costa Rica.

8. Why is the Arias Peace Plan described as an **accord**?

9. Name some of Figueres's **bequests** to Costa Rica.

10. How did Figueres come to power in Costa Rica?

11. What is the meaning of **conferred** as it is used in the passage?

12. Which **dignitaries** signed the Arias Peace Plan?

13. What is the name of the **institute** that celebrates Costa Rican culture?

14. What did the signers of the Arias Peace Plan pledge to **renounce**?

15. Why would the army have had its headquarters in a **citadel**?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

-
- If, after having a “heart-to-heart” talk with someone, you find yourselves in complete agreement, you could say that you are in **accord** with each other. This would be particularly appropriate because the word is formed from the Latin prefix *ad-*, meaning “to,” and the Latin root *cor*, meaning “heart.” Other English words derived from this same Latin root include *courage*, *cordial*, and *cardiac*.
-
- In French, *coup* means “blow” or “strike.” *Coup* in English, meaning “the overthrow of a government,” is

short for the French *coup d'état* (pronounced *kōō dā tä*), meaning “a sudden blow within the state.”

A *coupe* (pronounced *kōōp*) is a closed, two-door automobile. A *coop* (also pronounced *kōōp*) is a shed where animals such as chickens or rabbits are kept.

-
- The adjective form of **rhetoric** is *rhetorical*. A *rhetorical* question is one that is asked only for effect and does not require an answer. *What sort of person would betray his country for a few dollars?* is a rhetorical question.

| |
|------------|
| accord |
| affirm |
| bequeath |
| citadel |
| confer |
| coup |
| dignitary |
| embroil |
| epoch |
| impeccable |
| institute |
| patriarch |
| rapport |
| renounce |
| rhetoric |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

aperture

ap'ər chər

n. An opening or hole.

Tony could see an eye peering at him through a small **aperture** in the door.

cache

kash

n. 1. A hiding or storage place, especially for food or valuables.

A hollowed-out book provided a **cache** for the family's jewels.

2. Anything hidden or stored in such a place.

I found my sister's **cache** of marbles in the back of the closet.

combustible

kəm bus' tī bəl

adj. Capable of catching fire or burning.

Don't store **combustible** rags near the furnace.

delegate

del' ə gət

n. A person appointed to act on behalf of others; a representative.

Delegates from each section of the state attended the meeting on water conservation in the capital.

v. (del' ə gāt) To assign or entrust to another.

Mr. Juarez **delegated** to Karen and me the task of lining up the music for our school dance.



.....
Discuss with your partner how your teacher delegates tasks to students.

inclement

in klem' ənt

adj. 1. Stormy.

We had such **inclement** weather on the scheduled day of our field trip to the zoo that we postponed it to the following week.

2. Harsh; not merciful.

The preschool teacher's decision to place the crying child in the corner of the room all morning seemed like an **inclement** action.



.....
Talk with your partner about how you might react if you heard someone say something inclement to another person.

indelible

in del' ə bəl

adj. Not able to be erased; permanent.

The beauty of Venice made an **indelible** impression on the visitors.



.....
Share with your partner an indelible image, good or bad, that has always stuck in your mind.

malady

mal' ə dē

n. A sickness or unhealthy condition.

Malaria is a **malady** prevalent in tropical areas.



.....
Tell your partner about a malady that concerns you. How can you avoid it?

memoir
mem' wär

n. An account based on the author's personal experiences.
The Civil War anthology contains a moving **memoir** by a young Union officer.

paramount
par' ə mount

adj. Most important; chief.
It is **paramount** that my mother receive this message before she leaves the house at 5:00 p.m.

rectify
rek' tə fī

v. To correct or adjust.
The teacher **rectified** his grading error on my mid-year project by adjusting my final grade.

requisite
rek' wə zit

adj. Required; necessary.
When Aunt Mercedes completes the **requisite** two-year course, she plans to become a travel agent.

n. Something that is required or necessary.
Our teacher always insists that a sharp pencil and a sharp mind are the two **requisites** for taking a test.



.....
With your partner, list some requisite items you want to buy before starting high school.

squeamish
skwēm' ish

adj. Easily made to feel upset or sick to the stomach.
There is no reason to feel **squeamish** about giving blood.

tract
trakt

n. 1. An area of land or water.
The students developed a **tract** of land in the center of the city for a vegetable garden.
2. A system of organs in the body that performs some function together.
The esophagus and stomach are part of the digestive **tract**.
3. A pamphlet, often expressing religious or political ideas, that seeks to persuade.
Volunteers handed out **tracts** on legal reform.



.....
Your teacher assigns you to develop and hand out a tract. Chat with your partner about the subject you would like the tract to be about.

tribulation
trib yōō lā' shən

n. Great trouble or suffering.
The recession of 2008 caused much **tribulation** for those who lost their jobs.

vignette
vin yet'



n. A short sketch that provides a clear picture.
The movie begins with a series of **vignettes** about life in Los Angeles.

.....
Share with your partner a vignette from your life up to today.

18A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in **bold** is used correctly, write **C** on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write **I** on the line.

1. (a) The liver is an important part of the digestive **tract**. ____
 (b) The **tract** I picked up said the upcoming election was very important. ____
 (c) The **tract** of land next to the park will become a children's playground. ____
 (d) The athletes took one last sprint around the **tract** to warm up. ____

2. (a) The game has been postponed due to the **inclement** weather. ____
 (b) Playing video games was an **inclement** waste of time. ____
 (c) A series of **inclement** Supreme Court decisions held back progress on civil rights. ____
 (d) We agreed to study at the pleasant, **inclement** coffee shop. ____

3. (a) My first sight of the Rockies left an **indelible** impression on me. ____
 (b) Wipe away the **indelible** marker and start over. ____
 (c) In the spring, the **indelible** air around the cherry trees smells lovely. ____
 (d) The notes were written in **indelible** ink and cannot be erased. ____

4. (a) I have no **memoir** of anything that happened to me before I was four. ____
 (b) The celebrity wrote a lengthy **memoir** of her life. ____
 (c) A **memoir** by the current president would be a huge best seller. ____
 (d) The poor **memoir** outside is shivering in the cold. ____

5. (a) The pirates hid the **cache** in an abandoned house. ____
 (b) This week's **cache** will be about Maya Angelou's poetry. ____
 (c) The **cache** of art works had been hidden since World War II. ____
 (d) I was afraid I might fall and hurt my **cache**, so I climbed very carefully. ____

6. (a) Dry wood and matches are a **combustible** combination. ____
 (b) The food was healthy and quite **combustible** for the inexpensive price. ____
 (c) Water with high lead content is **combustible** for humans. ____
 (d) Anything **combustible** is banned from entering an aircraft. ____

7. (a) History tells of the **tribulations** of the Jewish people over many centuries. ____
 (b) Many **tribulations** flow into the mighty Amazon river. ____
 (c) Mama refused to let life's **tribulations** wear her down. ____
 (d) A Roman emperor offered **tribulations** to a victorious general. ____

| |
|-------------|
| aperture |
| cache |
| combustible |
| delegate |
| inclement |
| indelible |
| malady |
| memoir |
| paramount |
| rectify |
| requisite |
| squeamish |
| tract |
| tribulation |
| vignette |

8. (a) Oona sat down and played a **malady** from a popular Broadway show. ____
 (b) As people get older, they are susceptible to more **maladies**. ____
 (c) The man claims to have a single cure for all **maladies**. ____
 (d) The flu **malady** this year hasn't been so bad. ____
9. (a) Charvi grew more **paramount** as examination day approached. ____
 (b) A **paramount** concern was to get the brakes fixed before our departure. ____
 (c) Sitting Bull was the **paramount** chief of the Lakota Native American tribe. ____
 (d) A **paramount** objective of the debate club is to reverse its losing streak. ____
10. (a) Unfortunately, my cousin **rectified** the car, but he wasn't hurt. ____
 (b) The coach and the team captain tried to **rectify** the errors the team had made. ____
 (c) The mayor vowed to **rectify** the situation. ____
 (d) Ms. Nye **rectified** me when I call her Mrs. Nye. ____

18B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. Which word or words go with *weather*?
 (a) blustery (b) balmy (c) inclement (d) paramount
2. Which word or words go with *sickness*?
 (a) affliction (b) delegate (c) malady (d) ailment
3. Which word or words go with *most important*?
 (a) requisite (b) paramount (c) squeamish (d) indelible
4. Which word or words go with *opening*?
 (a) delegate (b) tract (c) aperture (d) vignette
5. Which word or words go with *representative*?
 (a) antidote (b) advocate (c) delegate (d) requisite
6. Which word or words go with *necessary*?
 (a) inclement (b) imperative (c) immaculate (d) requisite

7. Which word or words go with *fussy*?
 (a) squeamish (b) fastidious (c) sporadic (d) combustible
8. Which word or words go with *trouble*?
 (a) delegate (b) misfortune (c) tribulation (d) predicament
9. Which word or words go with *danger*?
 (a) contagious (b) toxic (c) squeamish (d) combustible
10. Which word or words go with *correct*?
 (a) memoir (b) rectify (c) vignette (d) precise

18C

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. The **aperture**

- (a) enabled us to see what was going on outside.
- (b) made it possible for the water to remain cold.
- (c) swung open, leading to a narrow passageway.
- (d) let in just enough light for us to read the map.

2. The **cache**

- (a) consisted of gold and twenty hundred-dollar bills.
- (b) promised to make anyone a millionaire who had a hundred dollars to invest.
- (c) of acorns hidden in the barn must have been left by squirrels.
- (d) of family photographs was at Grandma's house.

3. A **requisite** for

- (a) additional money was rejected by the board.
- (b) travel abroad is a passport.
- (c) good health is regular exercise.
- (d) entry to college is a high school degree.

4. The **delegate**

- (a) voted in accordance with her instructions from the White House.
- (b) to the United Nations was a former senator.
- (c) was read out in full before a large crowd.
- (d) from Tuvalu accused the American team of being disrespectful.

| |
|-------------|
| aperture |
| cache |
| combustible |
| delegate |
| inclement |
| indelible |
| malady |
| memoir |
| paramount |
| rectify |
| requisite |
| squeamish |
| tract |
| tribulation |
| vignette |

5. If you're **squeamish**, you
- (a) can eat something to tide you over until supper time.
 - (b) should not watch the horror movie.
 - (c) might have a problem watching the dissection.
 - (d) should put on a sweater.
6. The **tract**
- (a) measures seven acres and will be sold by auction next Saturday.
 - (b) was handed out on the street to provide information about the council meeting.
 - (c) that makes digestion possible includes the pancreas and other organs.
 - (d) of each planet can be predicted with great accuracy.
7. A **vignette**
- (a) of bandits riding into town firing pistols begins many Western movies.
 - (b) of life in the royal palace was told to the visitors before the tour began.
 - (c) at the service was performed by the celebrated pianist.
 - (d) held up to the eye makes distant objects appear closer.
8. **Combustible**
- (a) mistakes are easily corrected.
 - (b) materials should be kept away from flames.
 - (c) foods that come straight out of a packet are Adrian's favorite.
 - (d) lithium batteries need to be stored carefully when being transported.

18D

Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. An example of something **indelible** is

_____ .

2. A **memoir** is

_____ .

3. I think it is **paramount** that

_____ .

4. To **rectify** an error means to

_____ .

5. Something that makes me **squeamish** is

_____ .

6. One of my chores that I wish I could **delegate** is

_____ .

7. One of the worst **tribulations** I can imagine is

_____ .

8. A **malady** I have had is

_____ .

9. An example of **inclement** weather might be

_____ .

10. A **vignette** can be defined as a

_____ .

aperture

cache

combustible

delegate

inclement

indelible

malady

memoir

paramount

rectify

requisite

squeamish

tract

tribulation

vignette



Prairie Women

One day in 1975, Joanna Stratton was exploring the attic in her grandmother's house in Topeka, Kansas, when she came across a large **cache** of yellowing documents stored in boxes. They turned out to be handwritten **memoirs** describing life on the Kansas frontier from the 1850s to the 1890s. They had been collected by Stratton's great-grandmother, Lilla Day Monroe. She herself had experienced the joys and **tribulations** of frontier life when her family had moved from Indiana to Kansas in 1884, as the frontier period was drawing to a close. Her family settled in Wakeeney on a treeless **tract** in the western part of the state. Monroe married and became an attorney; later, with her family, she moved to Topeka, where she practiced law and campaigned tirelessly for women's rights.

The hardships patiently borne by the Kansas pioneers remained fixed **indelibly** in her memory. By the early 1920s, Monroe became concerned that the vital role women had played would soon be forgotten because no written record of their experiences existed. She decided to **rectify** that by collecting personal, written passages from Kansas women who still remembered those days. As word of her project spread throughout the state, more and more women responded until Monroe had collected eight hundred first-hand accounts. They were filled with vivid **vignettes** of pioneer life on the Kansas frontier.

It was evident from these recollections that shelter was the **paramount** concern of new arrivals. For a family settling in the treeless western part of the state, a plow was the chief **requisite**. Drawn by oxen, horses, or humans, it prepared the land for farming and provided the only building material available—sods. These were solid blocks of earth cut from strips of soil. They were used for the walls and roofs of the one-room frontier homes. Emma Brown of Mitchell County recalled life with her children in a sod house during a period of **inclement** weather when her husband was away on a cattle drive. The dirt roof leaked, soaking everything inside. "How happy we were to have the sun shine out again," she wrote. She tells how she and the children carried everything outside to dry. "But, alas," her account goes on, "the next morning the rain was pouring down again." It continued for another week.

Emma Louisa Smith of South Sappa Creek pointed out another problem caused by the lack of timber. "There was not a tree or even a bush in sight

to furnish us with fuel.” Fortunately, the early settlers discovered an unusual source: the dried dung of cattle and buffalo. It was both **combustible** and plentiful. The task of collecting it was one of the many that were **delegated** to the children. Emma Smith concluded that “the sod house and cow chips were two great factors in making possible the settlement of this country at so early a date.”

Despite the need for every pair of hands to do a share of the work, the children’s schooling was not neglected. Those who could read and write taught their children at home. Later, when local settlers organized schools, Emma Handy conducted classes at Oak Creek in a dirt-floored schoolhouse built of sods. She wrote, “It had neither blackboard, teacher’s desk, nor chairs. The seats were small logs split and supported by pegs.” Two small **apertures** cut into one of the walls provided the only source of light. The dirt floor served as a chalkboard, with a long, pointed stick used to write letters and numbers.

Life on the frontier was not for the **squeamish**. There were no doctors, nurses, or hospitals. When women gave birth, usually no one but a neighbor was in attendance. With medical supplies difficult to obtain, **maladies** such as malaria had to run their course. Injuries were frequent, so residents in Kearny County were fortunate that a woman named Amy Loucks could act as surgeon when necessary. According to the account provided by her son, she closed wounds with fiddle string and a common needle. Once, “with a razor and her embroidery scissors, she removed three fingers from the crushed hand of a railroad brakeman.”

Lilla Day Monroe died in 1929 before she had completed her project. The manuscripts lay undisturbed in the attic of the family home for many years until Joanna Stratton came upon them. She had the pleasure of editing the writings and of bringing her great-grandmother’s work to completion when, in 1981, *Pioneer Women: Voices from the Kansas Frontier* was published.

► **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. How does the passage indicate that Monroe remembered her early life?

| |
|-------------|
| aperture |
| cache |
| combustible |
| delegate |
| inclement |
| indelible |
| malady |
| memoir |
| paramount |
| rectify |
| requisite |
| squeamish |
| tract |
| tribulation |
| vignette |

2. What does Stratton's book contain?

3. What were the minimum requirements for teaching school at home?

4. Why was the plow of **paramount** importance to settlers on the prairie?

5. Why do you think it was necessary to dry the cow and buffalo dung?

6. How do you know that the old papers Stratton found were a surprise to her?

7. Which details in the passage suggest that the sod schoolhouses were rather dark?

8. How do you know that Amy Loucks was not **squeamish**?

9. What is one of the **tribulations** that the occupants of sod houses experienced?

10. How were most **maladies** treated by pioneer women?

11. How did Stratton **rectify** Monroe's failure to publish the book?

12. What is the meaning of **inclement** as it is used in the passage?

13. What were the sources for the information that appeared in Stratton's book?

14. Why do you think Stratton did not **delegate** the work of editing Monroe's papers?

15. What is the meaning of **tract** as it is used in the passage?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

.....

- The Latin *rectus* means "straight" or "right" and forms the root of *rectangle*, a shape made of four straight lines with four right angles. The Latin *ficere* means "to make" and forms the root of *factory*, a place where things are made. The two Latin roots combine to make **rectify**. When we rectify something, we *make it right*.

.....

- The French for "vine" is *vigne* and forms the root of the word **vignette**. The story of how these two terms came to be connected is an interesting one. It was once a common practice to place a decorative border on prints or the pages of books. The curling forms of grape vines and leaves, along with clusters of grapes, were often used for this purpose. These designs made little pictures in themselves. *Vignette*, therefore, came to be applied to any brief, descriptive sketch or a word picture.

| |
|-------------|
| aperture |
| cache |
| combustible |
| delegate |
| inclement |
| indelible |
| malady |
| memoir |
| paramount |
| rectify |
| requisite |
| squeamish |
| tract |
| tribulation |
| vignette |

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

bulwark

bul' wərk

- n.* 1. A wall-like structure used as a defense.
A wall of sandbags acted as a **bulwark** against the rising floodwaters.
2. A person or thing that protects or defends.
The Bill of Rights of our Constitution is a **bulwark** of our individual liberties.

culminate

kul' mi nāt

- v.* To reach or bring to the highest point.
The Fourth of July celebrations **culminated** in a spectacular fireworks display.
- culmination** *n.* The result of a sustained effort; the high point or climax.
Winning the Nobel Prize was the **culmination** of the scientist's long and distinguished career.



.....

Tell your partner the culmination of your life so far.

engulf

en gulf'

- v.* To swallow up by covering completely; to overwhelm.
During the hurricane, a huge wave **engulfed** the boat and almost swept the crew overboard.

feasible

fē' zə bəl



- adj.* Able to be done; possible or likely.
Building a new library is **feasible** if the town allots sufficient funds for it.
-
- Talk to your partner about some feasible alternatives to physical education class.*

glut

glut

- n.* A much larger supply than is needed.
A **glut** of office space in downtown buildings resulted in a sharp drop in rents.
- v.* 1. To supply a much larger amount than is needed.
The weather was so ideal that California's growers **glutted** the market with strawberries.
2. To eat or consume to excess.
Sitting under the heavily laden branches, we **glutted** ourselves on ripe peaches.

havoc

hav' ək



- n.* 1. Widespread destruction or devastation.
This morning we warily surveyed the **havoc** caused by yesterday's storm.
2. Great confusion.
When the rabbits escaped from their cages, they created **havoc** in Mrs. Tsai's classroom.
-
- Describe for your partner what could create havoc in your classroom and how you would help fix the situation.*

impregnable
im preg' nə bəl

adj. Impossible to attack successfully.
The citadel was **impregnable** because of its hilltop location and strong defenses.

indefatigable
in də fat' i gə bəl

adj. Not easily made tired; tireless.
Rescuers were **indefatigable** in their all-night efforts to reach the trapped miners.

onslaught
än' slôt

n. A fierce attack.
The Union **onslaught** at Gettysburg stopped General Robert E. Lee's invasion of Pennsylvania.

phenomenon
fə nām' ə nän

n. 1. Any fact or event that can be observed or described.
The aurora borealis, or northern lights, is a **phenomenon** visible in the night sky in the far north.

2. An unusual fact, event, or person.
Publishing her first novel when she was eighty-five made her a publishing **phenomenon**.

phenomenal *adj.* Extraordinary; very unusual.
You must have a **phenomenal** memory to remember all those names after hearing them just once!



.....
Discuss with your partner a phenomenon you have read about.

picturesque
pik chər esk'

adj. Like a picture; pleasing or charming to look at.
My favorite painting was of a **picturesque** old cottage with roses climbing its walls.

simultaneous
sī məl tā' nē əs

adj. Happening or existing at the same time.
When the thunder and lightning are almost **simultaneous**, the storm is very close to you.



.....
Imagine with your partner about what might be happening in another universe, simultaneous to what you are doing right now.

stipulate
stip' yōō lāt

v. To require as part of an agreement or contract.
My agreement with my coach **stipulates** that I need to keep a certain grade point average in order to stay on the team.

susceptible
sə sep' tə bəl

adj. Open or subject to; easily influenced or affected by.
Because I have hay fever, I am very **susceptible** to ragweed pollen.



.....
Pretend to yawn, and note if your partner is susceptible to it by seeing if he or she yawns, too.

wrest
rest

v. 1. To pull away from with a twist.

Tamika **wrested** the ball from the player on the opposing team.

2. To take by force or as if by force.

The parents **wrested** control of the school board away from the previous members.



.....
Chat with your partner about what happens in a sport if someone on the other team wrests the ball from a player's hands.

19A

Finding Meanings

Choose two phrases to form a sentence that correctly uses a word from Word List 19. Then write the sentence.

1. (a) Feasible events are those (c) that occur at the same time.
(b) that are copies of other events. (d) Simultaneous events are those

2. (a) a fierce attack. (c) A bulwark is
(b) An onslaught is (d) a demand greater than the supply.

3. (a) be overwhelmed by something. (c) To be susceptible is to
(b) To be indefatigable is to (d) be easily affected by something.

4. (a) is as pleasing as a picture. (c) An impregnable place is one that
(b) exists only in the imagination. (d) A picturesque place is one that

5. (a) To create havoc is to (c) cause a temporary shortage.
(b) To create a glut is to (d) cause large-scale destruction.

6. (a) obtain it with force. (c) To engulf something is to
(b) To wrest something is to (d) feed it more than it needs.
-
-

7. (a) something that cannot be explained. (c) A phenomenon is
(b) something that offers protection. (d) A bulwark is
-
-

8. (a) A glut of something is (c) its low point.
(b) A culmination of something is (d) an oversupply of it.
-
-

9. (a) To engulf something (c) is to be protected against it.
(b) To stipulate something (d) is to insist on it.
-
-

10. (a) A phenomenon is (c) something unusual or extraordinary.
(b) A culmination is (d) an unintended consequence or result.
-
-

19B

Just the Right Word

Replace each phrase in bold with a single word (or form of the word) from the word list.

1. The disagreements between the North and the South **reached the point of greatest intensity** in the Civil War.
2. The council's plan to raise scholarship money seems **likely to work** if everyone helps with the event.
3. Massive stones around the base of the shack made a **wall-like structure used for defense** against the shifting sand.
4. My grandmother was **unwilling to give in to exhaustion** in her efforts to earn enough money to send me to camp.

5. Rain in the desert is a **very unusual event** that shocks and pleases nomads.
6. Denzel was so strong a swimmer that he escaped the wave that **swept over** him.
7. Ravi's little sister **took by force** the remote control from his hand.
8. Strawberry growers **supplied more than met the need of** the market, so we got strawberries for dessert in our school lunches.
9. The Red Sox defeat caused **a great amount of confusion** in the bleachers.
10. Li's position on the chess board was **so strong that defeat was impossible**.

19C

Applying Meanings

Circle the letter or letters next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. On which of the following could one **glut** oneself?

| | |
|----------|--------------|
| (a) food | (c) shelter |
| (b) air | (d) exercise |
2. Which of the following can be **simultaneous**?

| | |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) two places | (c) two events |
| (b) two names | (d) two sounds |
3. Which of the following could cause **havoc**?

| | |
|----------------|--------------|
| (a) a reprisal | (c) a mutiny |
| (b) a calamity | (d) a deluge |
4. Which of the following would be **phenomenal**?

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (a) living to be one hundred | (c) shooting baskets |
| (b) memorizing the dictionary | (d) swimming the Atlantic Ocean |
5. Which of the following could be **picturesque**?

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) a panorama of mountains | (c) a gruesome discovery |
| (b) a pastoral painting | (d) a musical piece |

| |
|---------------|
| bulwark |
| culminate |
| engulf |
| feasible |
| glut |
| havoc |
| impregnable |
| indefatigable |
| onslaught |
| phenomenon |
| picturesque |
| simultaneous |
| stipulate |
| susceptible |
| wrest |

6. To which of the following can a person be **susceptible**?
- (a) flattery (c) suggestions
(b) maladies (d) entreaties
7. Which of the following can be **wrested** from someone?
- (a) a rebuff (c) a football
(b) control (d) power
8. Which of the following is **feasible**?
- (a) walking across the country (c) controlling one's temper
(b) making a billion dollars (d) running a car on water

19D

Word Study: Analogies

Complete the analogies by selecting the pair of words whose relationship most resembles the relationship of the pair in capital letters. Circle the letter next to the pair you choose.

1. IMPORTANT : PARAMOUNT ::
- (a) bizarre : usual (c) unkind : malevolent
(b) avid : lackadaisical (d) profound : wisdom
2. IMPECCABLE : FLAW ::
- (a) pungent : odor (c) prudent : caution
(b) irascible : patience (d) indefatigable : anger
3. GLIB : SINCERITY ::
- (a) despicable : dismay (c) inane : sense
(b) affluent : wealth (d) immaculate : forbearance
4. PATRIARCH : TRIBE ::
- (a) accord : agreement (c) president : company
(b) mind : intellect (d) philanthropist : gift
5. INCESSANT : PAUSE ::
- (a) interminable : end (c) ineffectual : effort
(b) balmy : breeze (d) lively : vitality
6. POISON : ANTIDOTE ::
- (a) pain : agony (c) disease : cure
(b) surmise : conjecture (d) barter : trade

7. SIMULTANEOUS : TIME ::
 (a) voluminous : volume (c) identical : appearance
 (b) rapid : speed (d) abundant : profusion
8. GLUT : SCARCITY ::
 (a) tumult : turbulence (c) affluence : poverty
 (b) banter : brevity (d) bulwark : protection
9. PUNGENT : NOSE ::
 (a) discern : eye (c) pale : skin
 (b) strident : ear (d) interminable : time
10. STIPULATE : REQUIREMENT ::
 (a) respond : question (c) vie : competition
 (b) rectify : correct (d) bequeath : asset

19E

Vocabulary in Context

Read the passage.



The Thousand-Year Battle

What can a small country do if more than a quarter of its land lies below sea level, threatened continuously by inundation? How can it **wrest** control of the land from the sea so it can be used productively? For over a thousand years, the people of Holland worked **indefatigably** to accomplish this task. They succeeded by building a system of dikes—great walls of earth and rock—as a **bulwark** against the sea.

In 1953, however, a freak combination of unusually high tides and hurricane-force winds along the southwestern coast caused this system to break down. Unable to withstand the storm's **onslaught**, many dikes gave way. The sea poured through. It **engulfed** the land, flooding 450,000 acres. The disaster killed eighteen hundred people. It drove thousands more from their homes.

The Dutch responded to this renewed challenge from the sea with the Delta Project. This plan involved the construction of a complex system of greatly strengthened dikes and dams. Its most innovative feature was a gigantic barrier designed to seal off Holland's southern coast, the area most **susceptible** to flooding. Begun shortly after the 1953 flood, the five-billion-dollar Delta Project took over thirty years to build. It was opened officially on October 4, 1986, by Queen Beatrix.

| |
|---------------|
| bulwark |
| culminate |
| engulf |
| feasible |
| glut |
| havoc |
| impregnable |
| indefatigable |
| onslaught |
| phenomenon |
| picturesque |
| simultaneous |
| stipulate |
| susceptible |
| wrest |

To the Dutch people, the Delta Project seemed like the **culmination** of their thousand-year battle against the forces of nature. Having constructed an **impregnable** barrier against the sea, they could now declare victory. But within a very few years, they realized that their reclaiming and use of the land had created other problems.

As far back as the fifteenth century, the Dutch had relied on pumps to remove water from the ground. The **picturesque** windmills so often associated with the Dutch landscape provided the power to operate these pumps. Modern technology provided more efficient methods, which the Dutch also used. The removal of groundwater, however, lowered farther the level of the land, making it vulnerable again to flooding.

Simultaneously, another factor—one that has been noted worldwide in recent years—was an elevation in sea level. This **phenomenon** is a result of what is known as the “greenhouse effect.” Carbon dioxide and other gases trapped in the upper layers of the atmosphere act like the glass in a greenhouse: They permit heat from the sun to pass through but prevent it from escaping. The result is global warming. The change in climate could melt polar ice, causing the sea level to rise two feet over the next hundred years.

The Dutch faced other problems because of their intensive farming methods. They relied heavily on chemical fertilizers. These had played **havoc** with the environment, to such an extent that the stork, Holland’s national symbol, had almost disappeared. In addition, the European Community, to which Holland belongs, faced a **glut** of agricultural products. It **stipulated** that its members take fifteen percent of their farmland out of production.

As a result of these pressures, the Dutch arrived at a decision that once would have been completely unthinkable. It was clear that their extensive and unrelenting fight against nature was no longer **feasible**. Instead, they devised a plan to allow one-tenth of their farmland to revert to its natural state. Land once twenty feet below sea level that had been cultivated for a hundred years would again be underwater.

- **Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson’s word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.**

1. What made the Dutch realize that the dikes were not **impregnable**?

2. How does the modern, efficient technology the Dutch use to pump water differ from the old-fashioned windmills?

3. Why did the high tides and strong winds do so much damage in 1953?

4. What is the meaning of **bulwark** as it is used in the passage?

5. What did the Dutch decide to do when they realized that their fight against nature was no longer **feasible**?

6. Why is Holland **susceptible** to flooding?

7. What did the Delta Project mean to the Dutch people?

8. What is the meaning of **phenomenon** as it is used in the passage?

9. For over a thousand years, how did the Dutch **wrest** control of the land from the sea?

10. How does the passage suggest that the Dutch have worked tirelessly?

11. How effective were the dikes against the freak storm of 1953?

| |
|---------------|
| bulwark |
| culminate |
| engulf |
| feasible |
| glut |
| havoc |
| impregnable |
| indefatigable |
| onslaught |
| phenomenon |
| picturesque |
| simultaneous |
| stipulate |
| susceptible |
| wrest |

12. What happened to Dutch farms when the dikes gave way?

13. What is the meaning of **havoc** as it is used in the passage?

14. Why did it become important for European countries to reduce their farmland?

15. Which group made Holland take some farmland out of production?

Fun & Fascinating **FACTS**

.....

- In Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*, Mark Antony says, "Cry 'Havoc!' and let slip the dogs of war," as he realizes his assassination of Caesar will bring more bloodshed. This word has an interesting history. In Europe, during the early Middle Ages, when a band of robbers was about to lay waste to a village or other settlement, the leader would cry, "Havot!" This was the signal to start the attack. The word originated among tribes in Germany and meant "take by force" or "plunder." The result of such plundering was widespread confusion and destruction. The word, later changed to **havoc**, entered the English language by way of the French

language and came to have its present meaning of "widespread devastation" or "destruction."

.....

- The Greek verb *phain* means "to appear." It forms the root of **phenomenon**, "an event that can be perceived by, or appears to, the senses." The correct plural of *phenomenon* is *phenomena*. (Among the *phenomena* we observed were an eclipse of the sun and a display of shooting stars.) Note, however, that in its meaning of "a rare or unusual event," *phenomenons* is also correct. (To have a musical genius in the family is rare, but to have two such *phenomenons* is almost unheard of.)

Lesson
20

Word List

Study the definitions of the words. Then do the exercises that follow.

alienate

āl' yə n āt

v. 1. To cause to feel unfriendly where friendliness once existed.
Be careful not to **alienate** voters, because we need their support.
2. To cause to feel alone and cut off from.
Her year out of school had **alienated** Ruby from her classmates.



.....
Discuss with your partner how you would handle a situation in which you have become alienated from a group of friends.

fervent

fēr' vənt

adj. Having or showing great warmth or deep feeling; intensely eager.
Looking meaningfully at the jury, the lawyer made a **fervent** plea for his client's life.



fervor *n.* Great warmth and intensity of feeling.
Romeo addressed Juliet with such **fervor** that her eyes filled with tears.

.....
Tell your partner about the person in your family who greets people with the most fervor.

forbearance

fôr bar' əns

n. A showing of self-control or patience.
With unusual **forbearance**, the principal asked the unruly student to explain the reason for his vandalism.

forbear *v.* To hold back; to keep from doing or saying something.
My mother asked me to **forbear** revealing to my younger brothers that Abuela was ill.

gullible

gul' ə bəl

adj. Easily tricked or cheated; too trusting.
I was **gullible** enough to believe him when he said he would be on time.

hindrance

hin' drəns

n. Any person or thing that is an obstacle.
Heavy traffic on the expressway is always a **hindrance** to my getting to school on time.

inflammatory
in flam' ə tōr ē

adj. Causing anger or trouble.

Even though the defendant's rhetoric was **inflammatory**, the Supreme Court upheld his right to freedom of speech.

inflare *v.* (in flām') 1. To excite or anger.

The principal's refusal to listen to our concerns **inflamed** us to the point of shouting.

2. To make or become swollen and sore.

Try not to rub your eye; it will just **inflare** it.



.....
Share with your partner an inflammatory speech or argument you have seen on television. How did it make you feel?

ordain
ōr dān'

v. 1. To order or prearrange.

The U.S. Constitution **ordains** three separate branches of government: the executive, the legislative, and the judicial.

2. To install as a minister, priest, or rabbi, often in a special ceremony.

She hopes to work in the villages in Chiapas once she is **ordained**.

ovation
ō vā' shən

n. An enthusiastic reception; long and loud applause.

When the pianist stepped onto the stage, the audience rose with a spontaneous **ovation**.

overt
ō vūrt'

adj. Not hidden; public.

After months of making small hints about my clothes, my older sister finally made an **overt** offer to buy me a new spring wardrobe.



.....
Give your partner an overt compliment.

recant
rē kant'

v. To take back an opinion or statement; to confess to being wrong.

After he talked to a lawyer, the young man **recanted** his confession and pleaded "not guilty."



.....
Say something to your partner and then immediately recant your statement.

rejoinder
rē join' dər

n. A reply to what has been said.

Uncle Paco was famous in our family for his funny, sharp **rejoinders**.

reproach
rē prōch'

v. To find fault with; to blame.

My mother **reproached** me for forgetting my little brother's birthday.

n. Blame, disgrace, or discredit.

When my grandmother died at the age of ninety-four, she had lived a life that was above **reproach**.



.....
Tell your partner how you feel when your parent or guardian reproaches you.

servile
sər'vil

adj. Excessively humble; overly willing to serve or to please.
Mari's **servile** attention to the teacher was her way of trying to get a good grade.

surpass
sər'pas'



v. To exceed or go beyond.
The fact that Marta finished her first marathon **surpassed** her wildest dreams.

.....
Tell your partner about a record you would like to surpass, such as baking the world's largest pizza.

vilify
vil'əfī

v. To make vicious remarks about someone in a way that damages that person's character; to slander.
The candidates for governor agreed not to **vilify** each other in their commercials.

20A

Using Words in Context

Read the following sentences. If the word in bold is used correctly, write C on the line. If the word is used incorrectly, write I on the line.

- (a) Refusal to learn is the biggest **hindrance** to success in anything. ____

(b) The loud music next door is a **hindrance** to me falling asleep. ____

(c) Before 1920, being born female was a **hindrance** to entering politics. ____

(d) There was a secret **hindrance** to the cave where the cache was hidden. ____
- (a) The senator's **inflammatory** accusations made national headlines. ____

(b) **Inflammatory** materials shouldn't be kept near a flame. ____

(c) The wound needs to be treated before it becomes **inflamed**. ____

(d) The speaker **inflamed** the crowd with her fiery words. ____
- (a) Priests are **ordained** at a solemn ceremony attended by a bishop. ____

(b) The school **ordained** that uniforms were to be worn all the time. ____

(c) I **ordained** the information I needed from the library. ____

(d) The king **ordained** that his only daughter would be queen after his death. ____
- (a) My best friend **reproached** me for not coming to her birthday party. ____

(b) The **reproach** I received was harsh but I admit I deserved it. ____

(c) At the first **reproach** of the lion, the gazelle turned and fled. ____

(d) Those aboard were told to look out for rocks as we **reproached** the harbor. ____

5. (a) The extra food will be **surpassed** to the homeless. ____
 (b) The library fundraiser easily **surpassed** its target of ten thousand dollars. ____
 (c) Marc **surpassed** his personal record by a full second. ____
 (d) **Surpass** me the salt, please. ____
6. (a) Her **rejoinders** always showed her great sense of humor. ____
 (b) Rihanna tried to think of a suitable **rejoinder** after Mel stopped talking. ____
 (c) The **rejoinder** was easy to assemble and take apart. ____
 (d) The **rejoinders** stayed with the group the rest of the trip. ____
7. (a) The girl felt **alienated** in the corner of the schoolyard. ____
 (b) The pool water was **alienated** with chlorine. ____
 (c) All trace of dirt on the kitchen floor was **alienated**. ____
 (d) My friend **alienated** me when she called me a rude name. ____
8. (a) The **fervent** Russian winter has had record low temperatures. ____
 (b) The graduates showed their **fervor** by throwing their caps in the air. ____
 (c) The patient's **fervor** was serious enough to require medical attention. ____
 (d) The **fervent** crowd cheered when the ball dropped on New Year's Eve. ____
9. (a) The young leader urged **forbearance** on his followers. ____
 (b) Phoebe asked me to **forbear** telling the teacher that she cheated. ____
 (c) I ran around screaming and waving my arms with **forbearance**. ____
 (d) The boy will never **forbear** the look on his mother's face when he gave her the rose. ____
10. (a) Those who are **gullible** are often tricked into giving away money. ____
 (b) Conditions grew more **gullible** as the scorching days went by. ____
 (c) The more **gullible** parts of the country were the first to be settled. ____
 (d) The **gullible** king believed that straw could be turned into gold. ____

| |
|--------------|
| alienate |
| fervent |
| forbearance |
| gullible |
| hindrance |
| inflammatory |
| ordain |
| ovation |
| overt |
| recant |
| rejoinder |
| reproach |
| servile |
| surpass |
| vilify |

20B

Making Connections

Circle the letter next to each correct answer. There may be more than one correct answer.

- Which word or words go with *praise*?
(a) acclaim (b) alienate (c) ovation (d) applaud
- Which word or words go with *not hidden*?
(a) fervent (b) overt (c) servile (d) apparent
- Which word or words go with *take something back*?
(a) reproach (b) instill (c) recant (d) ordain
- Which word or words go with *slavery*?
(a) bondage (b) ovation (c) servile (d) fervor
- Which word or words go with *attack*?
(a) triumph (b) vilify (c) surpass (d) assail
- Which word or words go with *sincere*?
(a) ardent (b) fervent (c) earnest (d) inflammatory
- Which word or words go with *criticize*?
(a) recant (b) admonish (c) reproach (d) rebuke
- Which word or words go with *exceed*?
(a) exist (b) inflame (c) surpass (d) stagnate
- Which word or words go with *conversation*?
(a) hindrance (b) rejoinder (c) ovation (d) banter
- Which word or words go with *passionate*?
(a) vehement (b) inflammatory (c) servile (d) combustible

Determining Meanings

Circle the letter next to each answer choice that correctly completes the sentence. There may be more than one correct answer.

1. An **ovation**

- (a) that lasted for minutes at a time greeted the pop singer everywhere she went.
- (b) on the edge of the cliff wavered in the wind.
- (c) of nine months is normal for human beings.
- (d) greeted the announcement that the president would make a speech after all.

2. **Recanting**

- (a) his lie to the principal took bravery.
- (b) was really her only option if she wanted to confess.
- (c) the water into the bathtub took forever.
- (d) every chapter for the test took Lu forever.

3. A **servile**

- (a) way to talk is to brag about everything.
- (b) look from her baby brother told her he was finally going to agree to a nap.
- (c) sun couldn't warm the snow that winter morning.
- (d) attitude is far preferable to an arrogant attitude.

4. **Vilifying**

- (a) someone else's signature is illegal.
- (b) outsiders for being different is atrocious behavior.
- (c) people for their religion is wrong.
- (d) usually makes people happy.

5. An **overtly**

- (a) private conversation was kept between the two of them.
- (b) significant day in United States history books is July 4, 1776.
- (c) large movement of the magician's hand pulled a rabbit from the hat.
- (d) loud and intentional howl from the crowd scared me into dropping the football.

6. **Alienated**

- (a) coastlines are disappearing as sea levels rise.
- (b) from society, the man spent a lot of time by himself.
- (c) from his mother, Kai has gone to live with his grandparents.
- (d) from her pack, the lone wolf curled up and went to sleep under a bush.

| |
|--------------|
| alienate |
| fervent |
| forbearance |
| gullible |
| hindrance |
| inflammatory |
| ordain |
| ovation |
| overt |
| recant |
| rejoinder |
| reproach |
| servile |
| surpass |
| vilify |

7. We **forbear**

- (a) discussing politics when my uncle is visiting us.
- (b) pain the old-fashioned way, by gritting our teeth and moving on.
- (c) in the pool every day at noon.
- (d) to respond even when we are personally attacked.

8. The **gullible**

- (a) investors realized too late that they had no proof the offer was genuine.
- (b) part of town is where all the nice homes are.
- (c) listeners believed an invasion by Martians was really happening when it was reported on the radio on April Fools' Day.
- (d) sound of a dog howling always sends shivers up my spine.



Completing Sentences

Complete the sentences to demonstrate your knowledge of the words in bold.

1. If someone **vilified** me, I would feel

_____ .

2. A **servile** attitude is one that

_____ .

3. I would **reproach** anyone who

_____ .

4. If someone asked me how I was doing, my **rejoinder** would be:

_____ .

5. An example of a **hindrance** is

_____ .

6. I would be **gullible** if I believed

_____ .

7. A person I would give a standing **ovation** to is

_____ .

8. Sometimes I feel **alienated** when

_____ .

9. An example of a person who is **ordained** in a special ceremony is

_____ .

10. I am a **fervent** supporter of

_____ .

Read the passage.



Paul Robeson: All-American

In his 1958 autobiography, Paul Robeson tells of bringing home from school a test on which he had scored ninety-nine out of a possible one hundred. When his father **reproached** him for not getting a perfect score, Paul tried to explain that “no one ever gets one hundred.” His father’s **rejoinder** was a simple question: “Then why do they have it?”

Robeson’s father had encountered and overcome great difficulties in his life. Born an enslaved person in 1845, he escaped to freedom at the age of fifteen and joined the Union army at the outbreak of the Civil War. Later, he attended Lincoln University near Philadelphia and was **ordained** a minister. At a time when African Americans were expected to be **servile**, Mr. Robeson was a strong advocate of racial justice and equality.

As Robeson instilled a strong sense of purpose and principle in his eight children, he demanded much of them. Paul, the youngest, born in 1898, especially rose to the challenge. In 1915, he won a four-year scholarship to Rutgers College. However, as the third African American student ever to attend and the only one enrolled at that time, he felt **alienated** from his classmates. His presence on campus provoked both verbal and physical abuse from the more **overtly** racist students. But Robeson showed great **forbearance** in the face of these attacks. His response was to excel in everything he attempted. He won prizes for public speaking and served on the student council. He earned twelve varsity letters in football, baseball, basketball, and track. In 1917 and 1918, he earned a place on the All-American football team. He ended his final year with the highest grades of his graduating class.

To finance an education at Columbia Law School, Robeson worked at various jobs, playing professional football and acting in plays on weekends. However, after graduation he practiced law only briefly. He was hired by a white law firm in New York City, but the pervasive racism he encountered led him to abandon that career. He believed he would be prevented from working effectively as a lawyer. Instead Robeson began devoting his time to acting in plays and giving concerts in which he sang spirituals, the traditional folk songs of African Americans. His rich, deep, expressive singing voice, along with the friendly, warm rapport he developed with his audiences, made him a successful and popular performer.

| |
|--------------|
| alienate |
| fervent |
| forbearance |
| gullible |
| hindrance |
| inflammatory |
| ordain |
| ovation |
| overt |
| recant |
| rejoinder |
| reproach |
| servile |
| surpass |
| vilify |

Within a few years, Robeson's fame was worldwide. His performance as Othello marked the first Broadway appearance by an African American actor in the role. The production's 296 performances **surpassed** the record of any previous Broadway Shakespearean drama. Later, in *Show Boat*, when he sang "Ol' Man River" on opening night, the **ovation** he received was overwhelming; the song became forever associated with Robeson.

As he toured countries around the world, performing in concerts and the theater, Robeson recognized similarities between the struggles of poor working people in America with those of people in other countries. Along with his regularly scheduled concerts, he often gave additional performances with a low admission price so that any who wished to hear him sing could attend. He refused to perform in theaters that had segregated seating. Through both song and speech, he conveyed a message of peace, freedom, and racial equality for all peoples.

Throughout the 1930s and 1940s, Robeson was lionized wherever he went; tens of thousands of people attended his concerts. However, after World War II, Robeson was deeply disturbed by the unfair treatment that he saw in his own country. Returning African American soldiers, who had fought for the freedom of European citizens, continued to be treated as second-class citizens back in the United States. Robeson spoke out **fervently** against this, both in the United States and in other countries.

The United States government, regarding both his views and his words as **inflammatory**, acted. In 1950, his passport was confiscated. Robeson was **vilified** in the press as a Communist because of his political beliefs; he was called **gullible** for his continuing support of and friendship with the Soviet people. After these attacks, his popularity with American audiences declined sharply. He was forbidden to leave the country unless he **recanted** his political views. This he would not do. Concert halls, record companies, and television stations refused to have anything to do with him. These **hindrances** prevented him from continuing his life as an artist.

In 1958, his passport was returned, in part as a result of pressure exerted by his supporters in countries throughout the world. Robeson was able to resume performing in concerts and speaking his mind. He called his autobiography *Here I Stand*, and no one was ever in doubt where Robeson stood on the issues of racial equality and freedom.

► Answer each of the following questions with a sentence. If a question does not contain a vocabulary word from the lesson's word list, use one in your answer. Use each word only once.

1. What was Paul Robeson's father's **rejoinder** meant to suggest?

2. What is the meaning of **ordained** as it is used in the passage?

3. Why did the United States government object to Robeson's views in 1950?

4. What **overt** step did the United States government officials take against Robeson?

5. Would it be accurate to say the United States government and press treated Robeson with **forbearance** in the 1950s? Explain.

6. How do you know that Robeson was a great success in *Show Boat*?

7. Why would it be inaccurate to describe Robeson as uninterested in social issues?

8. What is one adjective that could not be used to describe Robeson? Explain.

9. Why was Robeson banned from foreign travel between 1950 and 1958?

| |
|--------------|
| alienate |
| fervent |
| forbearance |
| gullible |
| hindrance |
| inflammatory |
| ordain |
| ovation |
| overt |
| recant |
| rejoinder |
| reproach |
| servile |
| surpass |
| vilify |

10. For what did Robeson **reproach** the United States after World War II ended?

11. Why didn't Robeson practice law for very long?

12. How did the rapport between Robeson and his admirers change during the 1950s?

13. How does the passage illustrate that news reporters wanted to destroy Robeson's reputation?

14. Why would it be inaccurate to describe Robeson's father as **gullible**?

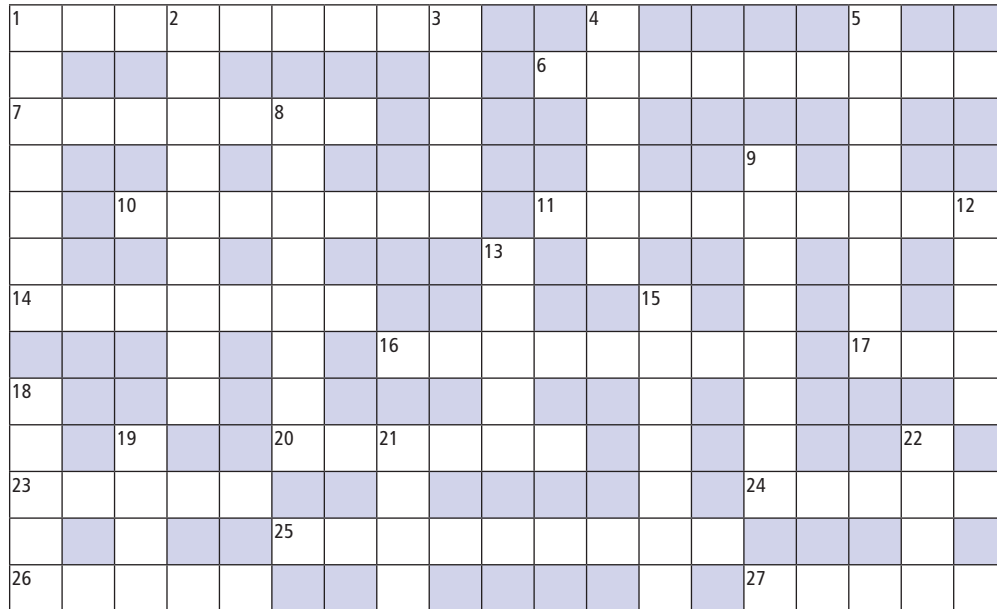
15. What might Robeson's father have thought of his son's accomplishments?

Fun & Fascinating FACTS

- Don't confuse **forbear**, which is a verb in which the accent falls on the second syllable, with *forebear*, which is a noun in which the accent falls equally on both syllables and which means "an ancestor." To complicate matters, the noun *forebear* is sometimes spelled *forbear*. No one ever said the English language was simple or logical!
- The adjective **gullible** is formed from the verb and noun form *gull*. To *gull* someone is to deceive or trick that person; someone who is easily deceived is a *gull*. Both verb and noun forms are passing out of use, but there are still enough people capable of being easily deceived to keep the adjective form current.

Review

Crossword Puzzle Solve the crossword puzzle by studying the clues and filling in the answer boxes. The number after a clue is the lesson the word is from.



Clues Across

1. To insist on as part of an agreement (19)
6. Something required or necessary (18)
7. To correct or adjust (18)
10. A fortress or stronghold (17)
11. Cold, wet, or stormy (18)
14. To involve in a conflict (17)
16. An opening or hole (18)
17. Abbreviation for *et cetera*
20. To swallow up by covering (19)
23. An extended period of time (17)
24. Widespread destruction (19)
25. Easily upset or made sick (18)
26. _____-turvy
27. Anything hidden or stored (18)

Clues Down

1. Excessively humble (20)
2. The male head of a family (17)
3. Of the same amount
4. To take back an opinion (20)
5. A short descriptive sketch (18)
8. Possible, reasonable, or likely (19)
9. To leave to others in one's will (17)
12. A stretch of land or water (18)
13. To get down on one's knees
15. To exceed or go beyond (20)
18. To obtain after a struggle (19)
19. A successful action that brings change (17)
21. An oversupply (19)
22. The two of them

Pronunciation Key

| Symbol | Key Words | Symbol | Key Words |
|--------|-------------|--------|--------------|
| a | cat | b | bed |
| ā | ape | d | dog |
| ä | cot, car | f | fall |
| â | bear | g | get |
| e | ten, berry | h | help |
| ē | me | j | jump |
| i | fit | k | kiss, call |
| ī | ice, fire | l | leg, bottle |
| ō | go | m | meat |
| ô | fall, for | n | nose, kitten |
| oi | oil | p | put |
| oo | look, pull | r | red |
| ōō | tool, rule | s | see |
| ou | out, crowd | t | top |
| u | up | v | vat |
| u | fur, shirt | w | wish |
| ə | a in ago | y | yard |
| | e in agent | z | zebra |
| | i in pencil | ch | chin, arch |
| | o in atom | ŋ | ring, drink |
| | u in circus | sh | she, push |
| | | th | thin, truth |
| | | th | then, father |
| | | zh | measure |

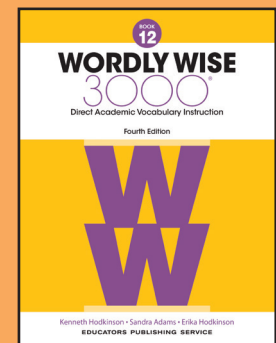
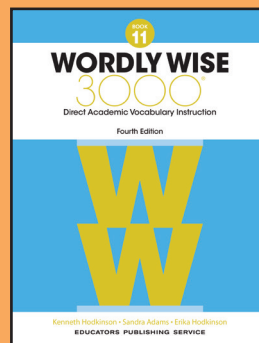
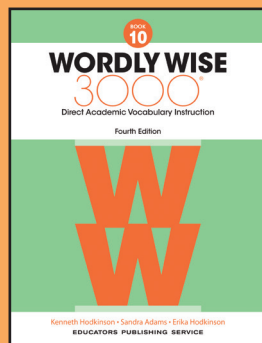
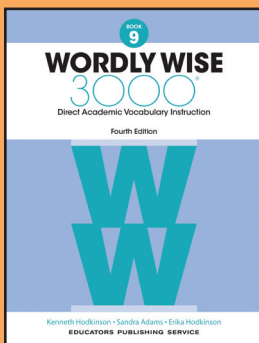
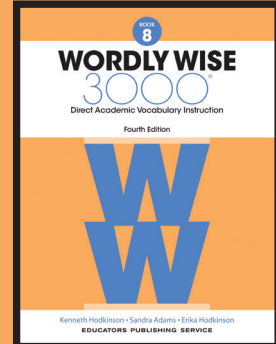
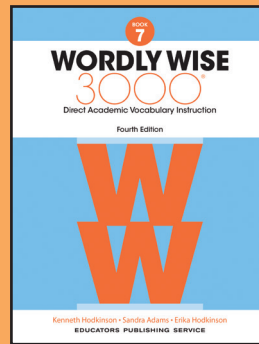
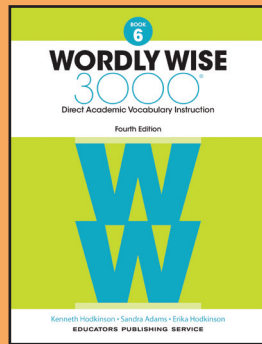
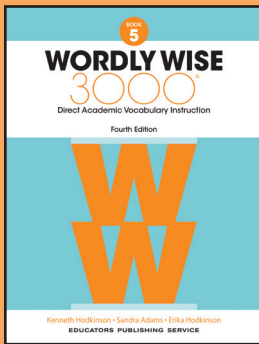
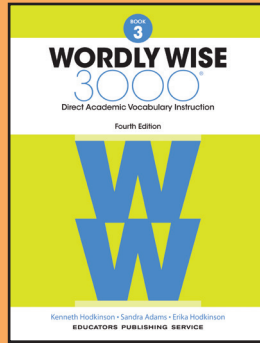
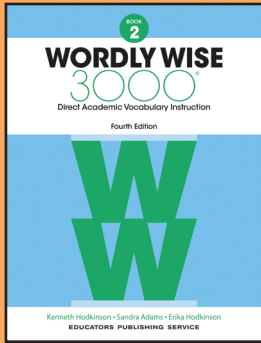
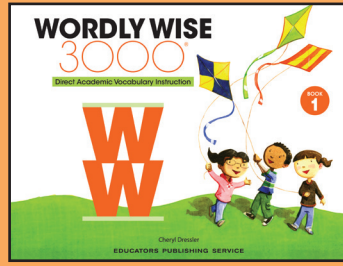
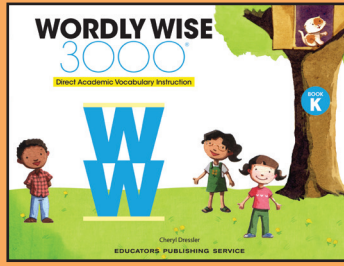
A stress mark ´ is placed after a syllable that gets a primary stress, as in **vocabulary** (vō kab´ yə ler ē).

Book 8 Word List

(Numbers in parentheses refer to the lesson in which the word appears.)

Academic words are underlined.)

| | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| abet (9) | clad (2) | elapse (6) | immaculate (16) | negligible (7) | resilient (1) |
| abhor (4) | claustrophobia (7) | electrify (2) | immerse (12) | | restive (15) |
| abject (10) | colleague (7) | elite (10) | imminent (6) | onslaught (19) | reticent (12) |
| abrasion (2) | combustible (18) | embark (5) | impeccable (17) | ordain (20) | reverberate (4) |
| accede (12) | commemorate (10) | embellish (11) | impel (4) | ornate (11) | rhetoric (17) |
| accord (17) | <u>concise</u> (1) | embroil (17) | imperative (3) | ostentatious (12) | rue (16) |
| adept (8) | condescend (7) | emulate (1) | impersonate (11) | ovation (20) | |
| <u>advocate</u> (10) | <u>confer</u> (17) | encompass (3) | impregnable (19) | overt (20) | sage (4) |
| affable (4) | confiscate (5) | encroach (15) | inane (7) | | serene (5) |
| affirm (17) | congenial (14) | endeavor (2) | inaugurate (1) | pang (8) | servile (20) |
| affluent (12) | congregate (9) | engulf (19) | <u>incessant</u> (16) | panorama (12) | shackle (6) |
| agile (9) | conjecture (3) | <u>enhance</u> (10) | inclement (18) | paramount (18) | <u>simulate</u> (2) |
| alienate (20) | connoisseur (11) | enigma (14) | indefatigable (19) | pastoral (11) | simultaneous (19) |
| alleviate (16) | conscientious (5) | entreat (4) | indelible (18) | patriarch (17) | slovenly (5) |
| allot(9) | conspire (6) | epoch (17) | indulgent (16) | perpetuate (15) | spontaneous (3) |
| amiss (4) | contagious (13) | evoke (1) | ineffectual (14) | pervade (1) | sporadic (9) |
| anarchy (6) | contemplate (13) | excruciating (1) | infallible (14) | pestilence (14) | squeamish (18) |
| anonymous (3) | <u>contingent</u> (7) | execute (11) | <u>inflammatory</u> (20) | <u>phenomenon</u> (19) | stagnate (14) |
| anthology (3) | copious (8) | exemplify (11) | influx (9) | <u>philanthropy</u> (12) | stamina (15) |
| antidote (16) | corroborate (2) | extricate (3) | inkling (5) | picturesque (19) | staple (9) |
| aperture (18) | coup (17) | | <u>innovation</u> (13) | pilfer (5) | stipulate (19) |
| <u>apprehend</u> (6) | crucial (8) | <u>facilitate</u> (8) | instill (3) | pittance (16) | strident (16) |
| arbitrary (12) | cull (15) | fanfare (7) | <u>institute</u> (17) | pivot (3) | stymie (13) |
| ardent (13) | culminate (19) | fastidious (8) | <u>interminable</u> (4) | precarious (11) | sublime (14) |
| arraign (6) | cursor (2) | feasible (19) | interrogate (6) | <u>precede</u> (8) | succumb (2) |
| artisan (12) | | fervent (20) | intricate (9) | prestige (12) | surmise (2) |
| ascertain (15) | daunt (7) | fitful (8) | inventory (2) | prevalent (3) | surpass (20) |
| assimilate (6) | decelerate (8) | flagrant (10) | irascible (4) | profound (4) | surveillance (15) |
| assail (13) | decipher (14) | flair (13) | irksome (12) | profusion (5) | susceptible (19) |
| asset (13) | defer (15) | fledgling (7) | <u>irrational</u> (15) | prolific (12) | swelter (6) |
| atrocious (10) | dehydrate (2) | forbearance (20) | irrepressible (14) | proprietor (1) | <u>synonymous</u> (13) |
| audacious (5) | delegate (18) | foreboding (15) | | protract (7) | |
| audible (8) | deluge (7) | forfeit (13) | lackadaisical (5) | prudent (5) | tirade (4) |
| augment (11) | demean (1) | | languish (10) | <u>pseudonym</u> (1) | tract (18) |
| avid (1) | <u>depict</u> (5) | <u>generation</u> (3) | legacy (12) | pungent (16) | tremulous (4) |
| azure (8) | deploy (8) | gingerly (2) | lionize (6) | | tribulation (18) |
| | derive (2) | glib (16) | loll (16) | <u>query</u> (9) | tumult (9) |
| balmy (9) | desist (15) | glut (19) | luminous (14) | | turbulent (1) |
| banter (8) | despicable (1) | grapple (8) | lurid (15) | rankle (5) | turmoil (10) |
| barter (13) | despondent (4) | grimace (2) | | rapport (17) | tycoon (12) |
| bedlam (16) | deter (13) | grotesque (11) | malady (18) | raze (10) | |
| benign (11) | dialect (10) | gruesome (2) | mania (13) | rebuff (1) | unseemly (9) |
| bequeath (17) | dignitary (17) | guile (3) | <u>malevolent</u> (11) | rebuke (5) | |
| bizarre (6) | dire (10) | gullible (20) | memento (9) | recant (20) | vehement (16) |
| bonanza (13) | discern (11) | | memoir (18) | recluse (4) | vie (14) |
| brusque (1) | discredit (15) | haggard (16) | meticulous (6) | rectify (18) | vignette (18) |
| bulwark (19) | dismantle (12) | hallowed (11) | mettle (7) | recur (3) | vilify (20) |
| | dispel (7) | haunt (4) | millennium (14) | rejoinder (20) | <u>voluminous</u> (14) |
| cache (18) | disposition (3) | havoc (19) | mire (14) | renounce (17) | |
| cajole (16) | dissect (14) | hindrance (20) | <u>modify</u> (3) | renown (11) | wrangle (13) |
| calamity (6) | dissension (6) | humane (15) | mute (10) | replica (7) | wreak (10) |
| <u>capacious</u> (8) | divert (9) | humdrum (9) | mutiny (5) | reprisal (10) | wrest (19) |
| chastise (15) | dub (7) | | | reproach (20) | |
| citadel (17) | | | | <u>requisite</u> (18) | |



School Specialty®

TRANSFORMING MORE THAN CLASSROOMS™



eps.schoolspecialty.com
800.225.5750

1585197

ISBN 978-0-8388-7708-1



9 780838 877081